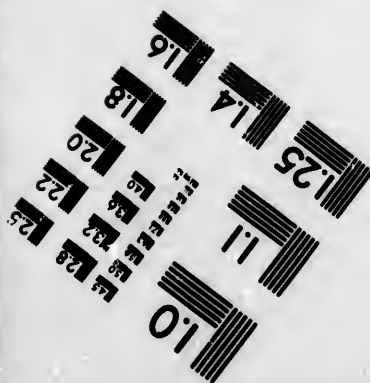
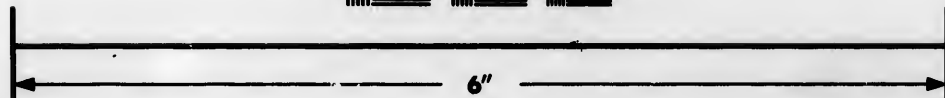
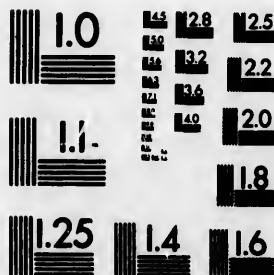


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1984**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/<br>Couverture de couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/<br>Pages de couleur   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/<br>Couverture endommagée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/<br>Pages endommagées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/<br>Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/<br>Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/<br>Le titre de couverture manque   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/<br>Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/<br>Cartes géographiques en couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/<br>Pages détachées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/<br>Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/<br>Transparence   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates end/or illustrations/<br>Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur  | <input type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/<br>Qualité inégale de l'impression   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/<br>Relié avec d'autres documents   | <input type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/<br>Comprend du matériel supplémentaire   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion<br>along interior margin/<br>La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la<br>distortion le long de la marge intérieure  | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/<br>Seule édition disponible   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may<br>appear within the text. Whenever possible, these<br>have been omitted from filming/<br>Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées<br>lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,<br>mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont<br>pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata<br>slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to<br>ensure the best possible image/<br>Les pages totalement ou partiellement<br>obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,<br>etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à<br>obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:<br>Commentaires supplémentaires:  | Irregular pagination: [1]-168, 177-206, 1-48, [1]-8 p.   |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

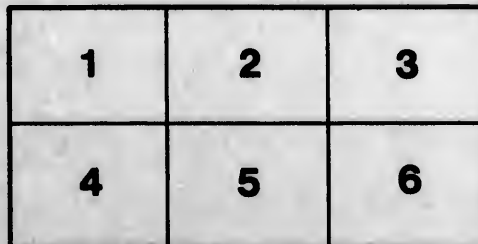
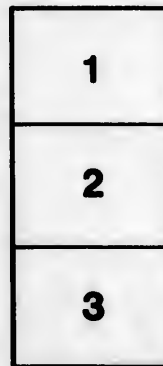
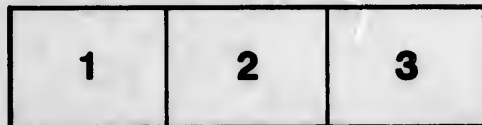
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

errata  
to

t  
e pelure,  
on à







A  
VINDICATION  
OF THE  
CONDUCT  
OF

Captain *Christopher Middleton,*

IN A  
Late Voyage on Board His Majesty's  
Ship the FURNACE.

FOR  
Discovering a North-west Passage to the *Western*  
*American Ocean.*

THE

COMMISSION

OF THE

LANDS

AND

A.  
VINDICATION  
OF THE  
CONDUCT  
OF

Captain *Christopher Middleton*,

IN A

Late Voyage on Board His Majesty's  
Ship the FURNACE,

FOR

Discovering a North-west Passage to the *Western  
American Ocean.*

IN ANSWER

To certain *Objections* and *Aspersions*

OF

*ARTHUR DOBBS*, Esq;

WITH AN

A P P E N D I X :

CONTAINING

The Captain's Instructions; Councils held; Reports  
of the Inferior Officers; Letters between Mr.  
*Dobbs*, Capt. *Middleton*, &c. Affidavits and other  
Vouchers refer'd to in the Captain's *Answers*, &c.  
With as much of the *Log-Journal* as relates to  
the DISCOVERY.

The Whole as lately deliver'd to the Lords Commissioners  
of the ADMIRALTY.

To which is Annex'd,

An ACCOUNT of the Extraordinary Degrees and Surprising  
Effects of COLD in *Hudson's-Bay*, *North America*, read  
before the ROYAL SOCIETY.

---

By *CHRISTOPHER MIDDLETON*,  
Late Commander of the FURNACE, and F. R. S.

---

L O N D O N :

Printed by the AUTHOR's Appointment; and Sold by  
*Jacob Robinson*, at the *Golden-Lion* in *Ludgate-Street*. 1743.

VIMBICION

CONDIT

Captain [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

WRITING

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

I.  
H.  
II.  
IV.  
V.  
VI.  
VI.  
IX.  
X.  
XI.  
XI.

# C O N T E N T S.

<b>S</b> <i>Secretary Corbett's Letter to Captain Middleton,</i>	page 1
May 23, 1743.	
<i>Capt. Middleton's Letter to Mr. Corbett.</i>	2
<i>Capt. Middleton's Letter to the Lords Commissioners</i>	
<i>of the Admiralty.</i>	3
<i>A Succinct Account of what passed between Mr.</i>	
D——— <i>and Capt. Middleton.</i>	5
<i>Mr. D———'s Objections and Capt. Middleton's An-</i>	
<i>swers.</i>	4d
<i>A Summary State of Mr. D———'s Objections an</i>	
<i>Capt. Middleton's Answers.</i>	65
<i>Instances of the Contradictions and Inconsistencies in the</i>	
<i>several Answers to the Queries proposed by the Lords</i>	
<i>Commissioners of the Admiralty to some of Capt. Mid-</i>	
<i>dleton's Officers, &amp;c.</i>	83

## A P P E N D I X.

<b>I.</b> <i>The Captain's Instructions for the Voyage.</i>	99
<b>H.</b> <i>The Lords Commission. Order of May 29, 1741.</i>	103
<b>III.</b> <i>Hudson's Bay Company's Order to their Governor</i>	
<i>of May the 30th, 1741.</i>	104
<b>IV.</b> <i>A Council held on board the Furnace, Aug. 1741.</i>	104
<b>V.</b> <i>A Council held at Fort Churchill, Mar. 21, 1741-2.</i>	106
<b>VI. VII.</b> <i>A Council held on board the Furnace July</i>	
<i>12, 1742.</i>	106, 107
<b>VIII.</b> <i>The Lieutenant's Report July 27, 1742.</i>	108
<b>IX.</b> <i>The Captain's Order, July 27, 1742.</i>	109
<b>X.</b> <i>The Lieutenant's and Master's Report, Aug. 1, 1742.</i>	110
<b>XI.</b> <i>A Council held on board the Furnace, August 8,</i>	
<i>1742.</i>	112
<b>XII.</b> <i>An Abstract of the Captain's Journal from Church-</i>	
<i>ill on the Discovery.</i>	114
2	<b>XIII.</b>

## CONTENTS.

XIII. <i>Mr. D—'s Letter to Capt. Middleton, November 19, 1742.</i>	page 120
XIV. <i>Capt. Middleton's Letter to Mr. D— November 27, 1742.</i>	123
XV. <i>Mr. D—'s Letter to Capt. Middleton, December 14, 1742.</i>	126
XVI. <i>Capt. Middleton's Letter to Mr. D—, Jan. 1742-3.</i>	128
XVIII. <i>A Letter of Mr. D— to Capt. Middleton, Jan. 22d, 1742-3.</i>	131
XVIII. <i>A Letter of Capt. Middleton to Mr. D—, date forgot.</i>	135
XX. <i>An Extrañ of a Letter of Mr. D— to Capt. Middleton, May 27, 1741.</i>	138
XX. <i>An Affidavit of Robert Wilson.</i>	138
XXI. <i>An Affidavit of John Mackbeth.</i>	140
XXII. <i>An Affidavit of Thomas Towns.</i>	141
XXIII. <i>An Affidavit of Ulrich von Sobrick.</i>	143
XXIV. <i>An Affidavit of Grance Grant.</i>	119
XXV. <i>An Affidavit of Thomas Cooper.]</i>	147
XXVI. <i>An Affidavit of John Dewilde.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
XXVII. <i>A Letter of Mr. D— Mar. 25, 1741.</i>	149
XXVIII. <i>An Extrañ of Mr. John Lanrick's Letter to his Father June 21, 1742.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
XXIX. <i>Extrañ of Mr. John Lanrick's Letter to his Father, Sept. 16, 1742.</i>	150
XXX. <i>A Paper of the Lieutenant, July 15.</i>	151
XXXI. <i>A Paper of the Lieutenant.</i>	153
XXXII. <i>Observations on this Paper.</i>	154
XXXIII. <i>A Letter of Lieut. Rankin to Capt. Middleton, February the 12th, 1742-3.</i>	155
<i>Queries propounded by the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty to some of Capt. Middleton's Officers, with their Answers.</i>	156
<i>Capt. Middleton's Account of the Cold in Hudson's Bay.</i>	193



---

A  
**VINDICATION**  
 OF THE  
**CONDUCT**

OF  
**Captain Christopher Middleton,**  
 IN

A late Voyage on Board his Majesty's Ship the  
**FURNACE**, on a Discovery of a *North-West*  
*Passage to the Western American Ocean, &c.*

---

*Secretary* CORBETT's Letter to Captain  
 MIDDLETON.

SIR,

*Admiralty-Office, 23d May, 1743.*

**M**R. ARTHUR DOBBS having laid before  
 my Lords Commissioners of the Admi-  
 ralty, Objections to your Conduct in your  
 late Voyage in the *Furnace* Sloop, together with the  
*Discovery* Pink, in order to find out a north-west  
 Passage; and having proposed several *Queries*, re-  
 lating to your Proceedings in that Voyage, to which  
 the late Lieutenant, Master, Surgeon, and Clerk  
 of the *Furnace* Sloop have given Answers, I am  
 commanded by my Lords Commissioners of the Ad-  
 miralty to send you Copies of the said Objections,  
 Queries and Answers, and am to acquaint you, that  
 the Publick having been at a great Expence in fitting

B and

ton, Novem-  
 page 120  
 D— Novem-  
 123  
 ton, Decem-  
 126  
 r. D—, Jan.  
 128  
 t. Middleton,  
 131  
 Mr. D—,  
 135  
 — to Capt.  
 138  
 138  
 140  
 141  
 rick. 143  
 119  
 147  
 ibid.  
 s, 1741. 149  
 rick's Letter to  
 ibid.  
 s Letter to his  
 150  
 15.  
 151  
 153  
 154  
 to Capt. Mid-  
 155  
 ssioners of the  
 Officers, with  
 156  
 in Hudson's  
 193  
 A

and sending out the said Sloop and Pink, in order to make the afore-mentioned Discovery, which would be of great publick Utility, their Lordships think it a Matter of a very serious Nature, and that they ought to be thoroughly satisfied, that the Person entrusted with the Execution of such a Design, has strictly performed his Duty therein; and therefore they expect, that you give a very particular and clear Answer to the several Points of Misconduct, which you are charged with by the aforesaid Papers. I am,

S I R,

*Your very humble Servant,*

THO. CORBETT.

*Captain MIDDLETON's Answer to Secretary  
CORBETT.*

HONOURABLE SIR,

I HAVE their Lordships Commands signified by your Letter; with the several Papers inclosed therein, containing Objections to my Conduct in my late Voyage in the *Furnace* Sloop, and *Discovery* Pink. As it is their Lordships Pleasure, I should answer each Particular in a distinct Manner, I humbly pray their Indulgence, that I may have Time to make my Replies thereto; not doubting, but I shall make such sufficient Answers as will be entirely to their Lordships Satisfaction; and prove myself an honest Man, and a faithful Officer and Subject to the King. I am,

HONOURABLE SIR,

*Your most obedient Servant,*

C. M.

To the Hon. Tho. Corbet, Esq;

This I sent at the receiving the  
Objections to my Conduct.

*Captain*

*Captain MIDDLETON's Letter to the Lords of  
the Admiralty.*

MY LORDS,

AS I was not in the least conscious to myself of any Misconduct during my Voyage to *Hudson's-Bay*, it gave me great Surprize and Concern to hear that Mr. D—— had made a most ungenerous Attempt to ruin my Character and Reputation, and deprive me of your Lordships Favour and Esteem: In both which Respects I might have been a great Sufferer, if your Lordships had not been pleas'd to order me a Copy of his Accusations. I therefore think myself oblig'd to return your Lordships my very humble Thanks for allowing me an Opportunity of making a proper and just Defence.

According to your Lordships Commands, I have drawn up full and particular Answers to all that Gentleman's Objections and Remarks; submitting the same to your Lordships candid and impartial Examination; being well assur'd I have therein paid the strictest Regard to Truth, and supported the whole with strong Evidence of Facts, from the Logg-Books and Journals, as also from the Instructions, Councils, Reports, Affidavits, &c. annex'd in an *Appendix*; as must, I humbly hope, give entire Satisfaction to your Lordships, in every Point alleg'd against me, and entitle me to your Countenance and Protection.

Mr. D—— has cast his Reflexions together, in so confus'd and incoherent a Manner; without Order or Method, and so frequently repeated the same things, that I was for some time at a loss how I might make my Answers clear and distinct, as your Lordships had required. At length I perceiv'd I had no other way but to answer him Paragraph by

B 2

Para-

Captain

Paragraph; and wherever I met with Repetitions, to refer back to the Answers already given.

Mr. D——'s Charges being of three Kinds, *Neglect, Misconduct, and Corruption, or the Suspicion of it*; I have, for your Lordships easier Perception, at the End of my Answers at large, made a summary Reduction of them under those three Heads, and subjoined the Substance of my Answer to each. I have also added a Paper to shew the many Contradictions and Inconsistencies in the Answers to the Queries, of which your Lordships have been pleas'd to transmit me the Copy.

But one thing is still unmention'd, which nevertheless I am fully persuaded is essentially necessary to your Lordships perceiving Mr. D——'s Objections in their true Light, and tracing them to their real Source; and that is a succinct Account of what has passed between Mr. D—— and me (or relating to me) from the time I first knew him, almost down to this Day; which I have therefore assum'd the Liberty to prefix to his Objections.

And now, my Lords, in an humble Confidence, that I have, to your Lordships Satisfaction, approv'd myself a faithful Servant and Subject of his Majesty, I hope that your Lordships will be pleas'd to allow me the Liberty to print a Defence of my Conduct at large, in order to wipe off those Aspersions which Mr. D—— and his Abettors have industriously cast upon me, as well in publick as in private, to the very great Injury of my Character and Reputation. I am,

MY LORDS,

*Your Lordships most obedient,  
and faithful humble Servant,*

C. MIDDLETON,

*A Succinct Account of what has pass'd between  
Mr. D— and C. MIDDLETON.*

SEVEN or eight Years ago, being then setting out on a Voyage to *Hudson's-Bay*, Mr. D— often made strong Application to me, then a Stranger to him, to quit the Company's Service, in which I had continued many Years with much Reputation, in order to undertake a Discovery of a north-west Passage into the western *American Ocean*; telling me at the same time, that he had already apply'd to the Governor and Directors of the Company about sending out a proper Person; but that they gave little Attention to his Propositions. I answered him, that I had experienc'd the Service to be so beneficial an Employ, as I knew not how to give up with Prudence; but he endeavoured to remove all such Objections, by assuring me he could procure me the Command of a twenty Gun Ship of War. I persisting in my Refusal, he entreated me to recommend some other Person; but I desired also to be excused in that Particular. However I offered to furnish him with all the Journals and other Memoirs I was possess'd of, which were likely to direct him to the Place where such a Passage might most probably be found. For both he and I were well agreed, that it was in vain to expect it on any Part of the western Coast of *Hudson's-Bay* lower than 65° of Latitude. Every time I returned home from my annual Voyage, he sollicitd me a fresh, and more pressingly than before; urging, that he was sure no one so well understood how to execute his Scheme as myself. I answered, that I thought his best Expedient would be to go himself, and then he might be sure of having every thing done to his Mind; besides indisputably securing to himself the Glory of so useful a Discovery, if he should succeed.

This

Repetitions,  
ven.

Kinds, Neg-  
Suspicion of  
Perception,  
made a sum-  
three Heads,  
wer to each.  
e many Con-  
swers to the  
been pleas'd

which never-  
ally necessary  
—'s Obje-  
them to their  
ount of what  
me (or relat-  
him, almost  
efore assum'd

e Confidence,  
sfaction, ap-  
subject of his  
will be pleas'd  
efence of my  
off those Af-  
Abettors have  
publick as in  
ny Character

lient,

e Servant,

MIDDLETON,

A

This Advice, I perceived, did not relish with him at all; however he became thereon a little more moderate in his Sollicitations than usual, till about four Years ago, understanding that I had been disappointed by the Company as to something I thought I had a Right to expect from them, he renewed his Instances, assuring me not only of the Command of a Man of War, but likewise of a Royal Grant to myself and my Posterity, of any of the Lands I should happen to discover. Being in the before-mention'd Situation with the Company, I consider'd his Proposals, and came to this Determination: That if he had Interest enough to procure me a Post-Ship, I would undertake the Discovery, and do my best. He readily answered, that I might rely on what I demanded. As I was unwilling to part with my old Masters, without giving them fair Notice of my Intention, I told them, it was not likely that I should undertake more than one other Voyage for them. They propos'd my continuing with them on more advantageous Conditions than before, which I refused; and from that time I acted in Concert with Mr. D—. Sometime after this, the *Furnace* Sloop was appointed for the Service of the intended Discovery, and I was to have the Honour of the Command: But finding that I was not to take Post, as I had condition'd with Mr. D—, I declined accepting the Commission for some Time after it had been made out; 'till Mr. D—, by alluring Promises that he would be sure to employ his Interest so as to procure me an Equivalent some other Way, prevailed upon me to take it.

I think it necessary to observe to your Lordships, that the Instructions by which I was to be guided in the Voyage were left entirely to Mr. D—'s modelling; and that they mention not a Word of searching any Coast, Tides, &c. or of attempting  
any



any Discovery southward of *Whale-Bone-Point* in 65° Latitude (*Append. I.*)

For the several Particulars of the Voyage, and my Conduct therein, I beg leave to refer your Lordships to the Log-Books, Journals, Councils, Reports, &c. as also to my Answers to Mr. D—'s Objections, and to the several Affidavits in the *Appendix.*

On my Arrival at the *Orkneys* homewards, I sent a Letter to Mr. D—, *Append. XII.* with a just Abstract of my Journal, from our leaving *Churchill* River to go upon the Discovery, to that time, by a Ship bound from thence for *Ireland*, and as soon as I arrived in the River *Thames*, I sent him a Duplicate of the same Abstract for fear of Miscarriage; both which in his Letter of *November 19.* he acknowledges to have received. In this Letter, Mr. D— says, “ I am  
“ convinced, from the Extract you have sent me  
“ of your Journal, that from the *Welcome* in 64° to  
“ the Latitude of 67 Degrees, there are no hopes  
“ of a Passage on that Coast; and if there is any,  
“ it must be further North, and consequently at-  
“ tended with more Difficulty. — Upon the  
“ whole, I think it would be in vain to push it any  
“ further that Way, I think the only safe Way  
“ now is by the Rivers *Nelson* and *Churchill*, &c.”  
He closes thus, “ I hope to have your Answer as  
“ soon as you can conveniently, with your Journals  
“ and Draughts; I wish you Health and Prosperity  
“ in all your Undertakings, and am, with great  
“ Esteem, Dear Sir, &c.” (*Append. XIII.*)

In Answer to this, I sent him my Letter of *November 27.* promising him my Journal and Chart by the first Opportunity, and adding at last,  
“ Undoubtedly there is no hope of a Passage to en-  
“ courage any further Trial between *Churchill* and  
“ so far as we have gone, and if there be any fur-  
“ ther



“ ther to the northward, it must be impassable for  
 “ the Ice, and the Narrowness of any such Outlet.  
 “ In Latitude 67<sup>o</sup> or 68<sup>o</sup> it cannot be clear of Ice  
 “ one Week in a Year, and many Years, as I ap-  
 “ prehend, not clear at all.

“ In any other Attempts, I shall be glad to give  
 “ you all the Assistance I can, and furnish you  
 “ with any other Informations that you may think  
 “ needful to promote your Design; but I hope  
 “ never to venture myself that Way again.” (*Ap-  
 pend. XIV.*)

In the Middle of his Letter, of the 19th of *No-  
 vember*, are inserted some Queries, which I answer'd  
 in this.

His next Letter was of *December* 14th, 1742, he  
 begins, “ Dear Sir, I have your last, of the 27th  
 “ of *November*, in answer to the Difficulties I start-  
 “ ed, which you have fully answered; so that I am  
 “ fully convinced there can be no Passage N. W.  
 “ by Sea, as we seem'd to have had Reason to ex-  
 “ pect; and therefore it would be very wrong to  
 “ think of attempting it for the future. ——— I  
 “ have a Letter from Mr. *Samuel Smith* yesterday,  
 “ that he has forwarded to me your last Journal,  
 “ and that you will send me your Draught as soon  
 “ as you have got it copied, for which I am very  
 “ much obliged to you.

“ I should be very glad you were employed in  
 “ some Way satisfactory to you by the Publick,  
 “ which you have so just a Right to, after having  
 “ quitted the Company's Service in order to serve  
 “ the Publick, and wish it were in my power to  
 “ contribute to it; I should do it with great Plea-  
 “ sure, and would go over on that very Account if  
 “ it would be of Advantage: In the mean time I  
 “ wish you all Happiness.” (*Append. XV.*)

I wrote back to him *January*, 1742-3, and  
 should have done so sooner, but that I was in an ill  
 State

State of Health, which would not permit me to return him a mature Answer to a new Scheme which he propos'd to me for my Concurrence in his last, of laying open the *Hudson's-Bay Trade*; my Sentiments on which was the Business of this Letter. (*Append. XVI.*)

I am apt to think your Lordships will believe, that hitherto our Correspondence seems to have been carried on in the most frank and sincere Manner, and that for any thing appearing to the contrary, we did repose a mutual Confidence in each other: yet Mr. D—— soon after commenced my bitter Enemy, and made use of the unworthiest Means to hurt me, as appears from an Affidavit of Mr. *Wilson's*, (*Append. XX.*) and from another of Mr. *Dewilde's* (*Append. XXVI.*)

The next Letter I received from him was dated from *Lisburn* (in *Ireland*) *Jan. 22d, 1742-3*, and begins this:

“ Dear Sir, In my last to *Samuel Smith*, I inclos'd one for *Lord\*\*\**, open for your Perusal,— and in the same Letter hinted at what I have discovered from your Journal at large, *viz.* that you have made a much greater Progress in the Discovery of the Passage, than you imagin'd when there; and that from the Lights I have got from your Journal, I can almost prove that you were in the Passage, &c. and that *Wager River* is properly *Wager Straits*, and not a fresh Water River — I only want your Chart of the whole new-discovered Coast to establish or contradict my Judgment of it, which I am inform'd is come to *Dublin*, but not yet sent to me.”

Here he introduces his Reasons, being much the same as those he brings in the present Objections. (*Append. XVII.*)

I soon returned him an Answer at large, in which I endeavour'd to undeceive him, by much the same

Arguments I have used against that Part of his Objections, (*Append. XVIII.*) and inclosed I sent him the Lieutenant's and Master's Report. (*App. X.*)

About *February* or *March*, Mr. *Samuel Smith*, mentioned above in Mr. *D—*'s Letter, being his Agent here, came frequently to me, and acquainted me that Mr. *D—* was resolved to pursue his Scheme of laying open the Company's Trade; and much importuned me to write to Mr. *D—*, that *there might be still hopes left of a Passage, even though I thought otherwise*; for that it would be a means of facilitating Mr. *D—*'s Scheme; in consequence of which himself, he said, expected some considerable Advantage: But I told him, I could not do it at any rate, since all things concurred in proving the contrary.

In *April*, Mr. *Rankin*, my Lieutenant, came to me, and shew'd to me a Letter he had received from Mr. *D—*, then just come to Town, in which he told him, that he had Reasons to suspect Captain *Middleton* had designedly suppress'd the Discovery he had made; and that believing him (Mr. *Rankin*) to be a Person of Veracity, he desired him to come and dine with him such a Day, and satisfy him in some Points he intended to propose to him. Mr. *Rankin* desired my Opinion, if he should go or not, I answered by all means, and to satisfy him in all things to the best of his Knowledge. This was the first time I had ever suspected Mr. *D—* of any uncandid Intention.

Mr. *Rankin* went on the Day appointed; and, the same Evening, came and acquainted me, that he found Mr. *Wygate*, my Clerk, and Mr. *Thompson*, my Surgeon, there; and that they all express'd a Surprise to see each other, for that every one expected to have been there alone. That the chief Matter proposed to himself was, whether he could draw up any thing to prove my voluntary

Neglect

Neglect or Concealment of the Discovery? And that he answered, he knew of nothing but what was contained in Journal and Reports, which he would abide by. The Clerk and Surgeon, he said, seem'd to be planted there as Witnesses to what he should advance; for there was little said to them in his Presence; and by their great Familiarity with Mr. D——, he made no doubt of their having been there before.

Upon this I determin'd to pay Mr. D—— a Visit myself; and accordingly went to him the seventh Day after his Arrival in Town. I sent up my Name, finding he had a good deal of Company, who all withdrew when I came into the Room. Being with him alone, he pretended to receive me very kindly; and when I express'd a Surprize, that, contrary to what was usual with him, he had been a whole Week in Town without letting me know it, or coming to see me; he answer'd, 'Twas on account of some indispenfable Attendances he was oblig'd to pay to Persons of high Rank. Without further Ceremony I tax'd him with his secretly dealing with my Officers; and told him, that if he had any Doubts to be satisfy'd in, he well knew I was always ready to do it myself, and I could not think he meant me well. He assured me my Suspicions were wrong, and that he only wanted to be informed, for the sake of satisfying the Lords of the Admiralty, why we returned so soon from the Discovery; and found it was owing to the very ill State of Health of both the Ships Crews: And when I took my leave, he promised to repay my Visit soon, which he did in a few Days; when, at my Desire, he perus'd my Log-Book and Draughts, and having ask'd me a few Questions about the Tides, took his leave, and I have never seen him since, excepting once or twice by Accident.

About a Week after this, Mr. *James Smith*, whom Mr. *D*— himself had recommended to me as a Friend (*Append. XIX.*) and as such was employed by me in the Voyage, as an Under-Clerk, and wrote most of the Copies of my Journal, came and told me that a close Design was carrying on against me, between Mr. *D*—, my Lieutenant, my Clerk, and my Surgeon, and that Mr. *Wilson*, my Master, being then just arrived in the River, he believed they had drawn him in too, for that he was sure he had been with them once at least.

Mr. *James Smith* came to me a second time, and told me, that Mr. *D*— had formed a Scheme to invalidate my Journal, and represent it as a false one; but that Mr. *Rankin* informing him, that his own Journals, which were already delivered in, and so could not be alter'd, agreed in the main with mine, that Project was drop'd.

Till now I had only felt a Concern for Mr. *D*—, who had behaved to me in so ungentle a Manner: But this Intelligence warned me that it was high time to think of securing my own Reputation from his Attacks, which I resolved to do if I could; and therefore, I forthwith sent to Mr. *Rankin* and Mr. *Wilson*, and desired that they would bring their original Log-Books with them, which they did; and we passed most part of the Day in comparing them carefully with mine, Mr. *James Smith* assisting us: And finding them agree in every thing of Consequence, they testified the same in writing, and so did Mr. *Smith*, in the first blank Leaf of my Journal, ready to be delivered to your Lordships.

At the same time Mr. *Wilson* and Mr. *Rankin* both declared an entire Dislike of Mr. *D*—'s practising with them; and *Rankin* added, that Mr. *D*— had endeavour'd to make his Wife believe that I had threatned to cane him, and persuaded her

her to influence him to revenge it some way or other.

Mr. *Wilson's* Professions of resenting Mr. *D—'s* Proceedings were undoubtedly sincere, as will appear to your Lordships from his Affidavit (*Append. XX.*) I cannot say the like of my Lieutenant. He meant me honestly at first; else a Letter in his own Hand-writing (*Append. XXXIII.*) which I entreat your Lordships to read, proves him the worst of Hypocrites. But the specious Promise of a Command in another north-west Expedition appears to have operated upon him, and soon altered his Conduct. As for my Clerk, he has openly declar'd, that because I did not make him a Compliment of a Purser's Warrant, (which I am sure he never asked of me) he resolv'd to disserve me the first Opportunity; and to that end took on in Mr. *D—'s* Service; not doubting, with the help of his Friend the Surgeon, to do my Business, and be rewarded on that Account with a Purser'ship. (Mr. *Dewilde's*, Mr. *Wilson's*, and Mr. *Macbeath's* Affidavits, *App. XX. XXI. and XXVI.*)

On the other hand, as I have already acknowledged the very friendly Admonitions of Mr. *James Smith*, Mr. *D—'s* particular Friend, I ought not to forget Mr. *John Lindrick*, another young Gentleman of Mr. *D—'s* recommending, for the generous Account of my Behaviour which he sent his Father from the *Orkneys*, at a Time when he little thought I should be represented in so different Colours; His Letter it seems was printed in some of the *Irish* News-Papers; and I am told was reprinted in several of our own about *November* last. (*Append. XXVIII. and XXIX.*)

Altho' Mr. *D—* had contriv'd that his Scheme should not take Air before most of my People were gone away into other Service; yet I have been convinced, greatly to my Satisfaction, of the Disposition

position of those that are left of them, in and near *London*, to do me Justice: For without any Application of mine, hearing of the Designs on Foot against me, they have enquired me out one after another, and offered to make Affidavit of what they happened to be Witnesses to in the Voyage, and which they do still well remember. It was from some of these I first learned that certain Queries had been sent, by your Lordships Direction, to be answer'd by some of my Officers; which I find by the Transcript your Lordships were pleased to order me, have been answered accordingly.

This is the Account which I have mentioned before to your Lordships; and I humbly hope your Forgiveness, if it shall be thought somewhat more prolix than may be consistent with your Attention to Affairs of much greater Importance.

OBJECTIONS of Mr. *A---* *D---* to the Conduct of Capt. *Christopher Middleton*, in a late Voyage for a Discovery of a North-west Passage: Together with Capt. *Christopher Middleton's* Defence of his Conduct, in Answer to the Objections of Mr. *A---* *D---*.

Mr. *D---*

**I**T appears that he found a strict Tide at the Head-Land, N. E. of Brook Cobham, and that the Tide sometimes rose there 22 Feet, and that many Whales were seen there close in upon Shore, but none seen but in that Place and in Wager River by him, and in the same Bay by Fox, and between Cape Fulleton and Whalebone Point by Scroggs.

What



m, in and near  
out any Appli-  
gns on Foot a-  
out one after  
avit of what  
in the Voyage,  
mber. It was  
certain Queries  
Direction, to be  
which I find by  
pleased to or-  
ngly.  
mentioned be-  
bly hope your  
omewhat more  
your Attention  
ce.

D--- to the  
Middleton, in a  
North-west  
t. Christopher  
duct, in An-  
A--- D---

e at the Head-  
and that the  
nd that many  
shore, but none  
River by him,  
ween Cape Ful-  
gs.

What

Capt. Middleton.

Journals,  
July 5. Ma-  
ster's Answers  
to Qu. 10.  
and 14.

What Mr. D— means by a strict  
Tide, I cannot guess. Being outward  
Bound in Lat.  $63^{\circ} 20'$  No. 9 or 10  
Leagues to the Eastward of Brook Cob-  
bam, I met with a Tide off the Head-  
land, which run but two Miles an Hour, from the  
N. E. b. E. one Day before the Full-Moon: This  
is no more than what we find all along that Coast;  
as also between *Cchurchill* and *York Fort*, near the  
Full and Change: And also, when it blows hard  
with a Wind northerly, we frequently experience  
the Tide to rise as high as 20 or 22 Feet. Twenty  
Years Observations along these Coasts, have con-  
firm'd me in this, and all who have been duly ac-  
quainted with them know it well. Our Journals  
do not mention any Whales, Seals, or Sea-Horses,

to have been seen nearer *Brook Cobham*,  
Journals, than off the Head-land, which is 10  
Aug. 12. Leagues from it, nor did we see any near  
that Coast besides there.

Mr. D—

*But no black Whales seen at any other time in any o-  
ther Part of the Bay, or in Hudson's Straits, by any  
Ships who have been in the Bay, either upon Trade,  
or upon making Discovery.*

Capt. Middleton:

I have almost every Voyage seen Whales 50 or  
60 Leagues up in *Hudson's Straits*, and have frequent-  
ly traded for fresh Bone in all Parts of the Straits  
and Bays, particularly about the *Upper Salvages*, *Sal-  
isbury*, and *Nottingham* in the Straits; the *Sleepers*,  
*Baker's Dozens*, and as far down as *Belcher's Islands*,  
in Lat.  $56^{\circ}$  in the Bay, the Company allowing us  
25 per cent. neat Profit upon all such Trade. That  
this

this can be no other than the Bone of Whales actually taken in these Parts, is evident beyond Dispute, to all who know, that in 10 or 12 Days after a Whale is dead, the Bone drops off of itself from his Mouth ; for it is impossible the dead Fish should drive 180 Leagues in that Time, since no Ship, even under her main Course, or at Hull, has ever been known by the greatest Storm to drive above two Miles, or two Miles and an Half an Hour : But it is well known, that a very small Part only of a dead Whale's Body emerges above the Surface of the Water ; well then may it be admitted, that it would require at least 3 Months, in the most favourable Circumstances, for such Fish to drive from *Wager River* or *Brook Cobham*, to any of the beforemention'd Parts, or to *Rupert River*, where a dead Whale was found about 3 Years since, with the Bone all in its Mouth ; a sure Proof that it had lately liv'd thereabouts. It is not reasonable to conclude, that there are no Whales in *Hudson's Bay*, because we have never seen any. It should be considered, that in our Track we always keep at a great Distance from the Shore, at a time of the Year when the Whales keep in the Bays and great Inlets. This is the Reason why all those *Indians* that drink Train-Oil, and feed on Blubber, choose to inhabit the East Main, as I have been assured by one of them who lived with me three Years.

Mr. D—

*That Wager River is a Strait and no fresh River, is evident from its Increase and Depth, from the Entrance on the East-side, to the South-westward and North-westward, and also the Height of the Lands, and there being no Shrubs nor Timber on any of the Lands, tho' always found in the same, or more northerly Latitudes, upon fresh Water Rivers.*

one of Whales  
 evident beyond  
 10 or 12 Days  
 drops off of itself  
 ble the dead Fish  
 Time, since no  
 or at Hull, has  
 Storm to drive  
 and an Half an  
 at a very small  
 y emerges above  
 en may it be ad-  
 alt 3 Months, in  
 s, for such Fish  
 ook *Cobham*, to  
 s, or to *Rupert*  
 found about 3  
 Mouth; a sure  
 bouts. It is not  
 are no Whales in  
 er seen any. It  
 rrack we always  
 Shore, at a time  
 in the Bays and  
 y all those Indi-  
 ed on Blubber,  
 s I have been as-  
 with me three

no fresh River,  
 b, from the En-  
 b-westward and  
 b of the Lands,  
 er on any of the  
 or more norther-

Capt.

Capt. Middleton.

Journal of  
 our 3 Weeks  
 Stay there,  
 and the Affi-  
 davits of  
*Towns, Von*  
*Sobriek and*  
*Grant.* Ap-  
 pend.

That *Wager* River was no Strait, but  
 a fresh Water River, I collected from  
 the following Particulars. 1<sup>st</sup>, From  
 the Floods coming in at its Mouth from  
 the Eastward. 2<sup>dly</sup>, From its flowing  
 18 Feet at the Entrance, but 13 at  
*Deer Sound*, and at the highest the Boat  
 went, no more than 5 or 6 Feet. 3<sup>dly</sup>,  
 From the Water's being almost fresh in the Mid-  
 Channel above *Deer Sound*, so that the Men chose  
 to drink it alongside the Boat, when myself was  
 present. 4<sup>thly</sup>, From the Water-falls being so  
 strong, as to force the Boat to come to a Grapnel,  
 being unable to proceed higher up.

Mr. D—

*The East Entrance of Wager River was only 7 Miles  
 wide, and from 14 to 44 Fathoms in the Mid-Channel,  
 as they sailed in, with a rapid Tide, which run from  
 6 to 9 Miles in an Hour, but farther up Westward,  
 even from 20 Leagues to 30 Northwest, it increased  
 to 8 and 10 Leagues wide; and so as to have no Ground  
 with a Line of 68 Fathoms.*

Capt. Middleton.

It is a fallacious Way of arguing *Wager* River  
 to be a Strait from its Increase and Depth of Water.  
 In several Parts of the *Norway* and *Swedish* Coasts,  
 there are large Rivers which the Natives call *Fewrs*,  
 not above 10 or 12 Fathom at the Entrance, and  
 yet they discover no Ground within, with many  
 hundred Fathoms of Line. It is indeed not difficult,  
 tho' it would be too tedious, to account for all such  
 Rivers enlarging their Capacities, both in Breadth  
 and Depth.

The Land I saw here was as high to the full, as  
 D any

any I met with about the River *Wager* : As for the want of Trees and Shrubs, those who have travelled from *Churchill* N. W. as far as the *Arctic* Circle, by Land, as *Norton* and many others, all agree, that after they had past the Lat. of  $61^{\circ}$  they never saw the least Tree or Shrub, tho' they went 2 or 300 Miles within Land, amongst Lakes and Rivers of fresh Waters.

Mr. D—

*At 20 Leagues from the Entrance, it was full of black Whales, Seals, and Sea-Horses, when there were no Whales seen below, or without the River.*

Capt. Middleton.

I saw myself only two small Whales, neither of them of the Whalebone kind, in *Wager* River, these were at *Deer Sound*, where the Lieutenant and Master saw others of the black kind, but none were seen above it ; these, they were of Opinion, came by some Inlet on the East-side the River. Mr. D— says, that the River, at 20 Leagues from the Entrance, was full of black Whales, Seals, and Sea-horses. None ever saw Whales above *Deer Sound*, which yet is but 15 Leagues higher than the Entrance. But how comes it about that none of these were seen yet higher up, nearer his pretended Passage into the Western Ocean, where it was clear of Ice, if

Logg Book,  
Aug. 4. and  
the Affidavits  
of *Towns*, *Von*  
*Sobriek* and  
*Grant*. Ap-  
pend. XXII.  
XXIII. and  
XXIV.

they came in that Way ; whereas myself and others saw three at our coming out of the River ? After all, if the Whales came not in from the Eastward, why should there be such Abundance of Eskimaux about *Savage Sound*, but eight Leagues within the River's Mouth, with Store-houses of Blubber and Fin, and none to be seen else-where

er : As for the  
to have travelled  
*Arctic Circle*, by  
all agree, that  
they never saw  
went 2 or 300  
s and Rivers of

, it was full of  
, when there were  
River.

hales, neither of  
n *Wager River*,  
e Lieutenant and  
the black kind,  
above it ; these,  
, came by some  
Mr. D—— says,  
m the Entrance,  
and Sea-horses.  
er Sound, which  
an the Entrance.  
ne of these were  
tended Passage in-  
vas clear of Ice, if  
say ; whereas my-  
ree at our coming  
After all, if the  
n from the East-  
ere be such Abun-  
bout *Savage Sound*,  
within the River's  
houses of Blubber  
to be seen else-  
where

where on the Coasts of this River ? Whereas, did they come in higher from the Westward, the Inland whereof these *Indians* chiefly inhabit, we should certainly have found them and their Store-houses that way, and not down the River 60 Miles from their Homes. As for Mr. D——'s Seals and Sea-horses in the River *Wager*, I take them to be all his own ; I never saw any there myself, nor have I heard that any of my People ever did.

Mr. D——

—— *All broken Land at the Northwest End, with a great Collection of Waters full of Islands, the Lands on the Sides as high as the Lands at the Cape of Good-Hope, and a large Opening on the Southwest Side,*

Capt. Middleton.

The Lieutenant and Master say indeed in their Report, that they saw, far to the Northward, a large Collection of Waters, with mountainous Land on the Sides ; and on the West-side bluff Points, and broken Land : But then they take Notice also of a great Run or Fall of Water on this Side the said Collection of Waters, which doubtless must have rendered any Progress upwards impracticable ; and affords a strong Argument against any Communication between *Wager River* and the Western *American Ocean*. If it be worth while to form any probable Conjectures about such large Collections of Waters, I wou'd say, 'tis likely they are no other than a kind of Lakes of melted Snows from the Mountains ; for several such we saw every where between the Hills, in the Valleys, when we were ashore on Mountains about *Cape Frigid*, and above *Deer Sound* ; as also on the S. W. Side of the River *Wager*, where I was myself the Day before we left that River ;

D 2

Mr. D——

Mr. D——

—— which was never attempted nor look'd into, ——

Capt. Middleton.

tho' Mr. D—— is pleas'd to say, that this Side was never so much as look'd into at all. The Truth is, we had made several unsuccessful Attempts to land there, but never could for Ice, before that Day.

Mr. D——

—— nor none of the Bays nor broken Lands betwixt Whale Cove and Cape Dobbs, the South Cape of Wager River, were search'd into at all, ——

Capt. Middleton.

At our Return from Cape *Frigid* to Brook *Cobham*, we search'd exactly all the West-shore, as near as the Islands and Rocks permitted us with Safety ; and saw all the Main-land and Bottom of the Bays, as is explained at large in our Logg Book, shewing the Course and Distance sail'd every Hour, in hauling off or on, to deepen and shoalden the Water, which the Journal expresse les particularly ; especially from *Whalebone* Point to Brook *Cobham* homewards : The rest of the Way Northward we had travers'd outward bound. We had very little hazy Weather, except in the Night, and then we lay by till Day-light, and hauled in as near the Shore as we durst. It was not possible to miss any Inlets where there could be any Hopes of a Passage. Off Cape *Fullerton*, we met with Rocks and broken Ground 5 Leagues distant, which oblig'd us to haul further off to deepen our Water, and lay too for moderate clear Weather,

Logg Book  
Aug. 10, 11,  
12, 13, 14.  
Master's Anf.  
to Qu. 12. Af-  
fidavits of  
*Towns, Von*  
*Sobriek,* and  
*Grant.* Ap-  
pend. XXII.  
XXIII. and  
XXIV.

Journal and  
Logg Book  
Aug. 10, 11.

Weather, between the two Shores. But when it cleared up, we stood in N. and N. b. W. into 40 odd Fathoms; if we came within that Depth, we fell into broken Ground, sudden Shoaldings, Ripplings, and Overfalls. But between Lat.  $64^{\circ}$  and  $63^{\circ}$ , we had better Soundings, and could come nearer the Land, tho' at Night we were obliged to ke p a League or two further out, and drive, as *per* Logg Book, and stand in Shore in the Day: We never, but once, were above 4 or 5 Leagues off Shore, and that was towards Morning, in Expectance of Day-light; in most other Places not above 2 or 3 Leagues from the Land, and in 9 Fathoms Water off the Head-land in Lat.  $63^{\circ} 20'$ . All the North-side of the *Welcome* is high Land, and as far as Brook *Cobham*, appears very near at 4 or 5 Leagues Distance. *Fox's* Account of this Coast, and its Tides, may be met with in a Book printed at London in 1635, entitled *North-west Fox, or Fox from the North-west Passage*.

Mr. D——

— *tho' the chief Places pointed at by Fox and Scroggs for a Passage; they having mention'd them to be all broken Lands and Islands, where many Whales were seen, where were high Tides from 4 to 5 Fathoms,—*

Capt. Middleton.

*Scroggs's* Account is in the Possession of the *Hudson's Bay* Company. I have carefully perused both that and *Fox's* many Years since. They are so profoundly unintelligible, that one may venture to say, no uninspired Person can make any Thing of them.

Mr. D——

— *but no Stop made there by Capt. Middleton, nor his Boats ever once sent on Shore, to try the Tides, or search after Inlets or Straits, tho' he had very fine Weather*

look'd into,——

hat this Side was  
The Truth is,  
Attempts to land  
fore that Day.

en Lands betwixt  
be South Cape of  
t all,——

m Cape *Frigid* to  
searched exactly all  
near as the Islands  
d us with Safety;  
land and Bottom  
explained at large  
showing the Course  
every Hour, in  
to deepen and  
which the Jour-  
nally from *Whale-*  
wards: The rest  
traversed outward  
Weather, except  
till Day-light, and  
we durst. It was  
ere there could be  
ape *Fullerton*, we  
d broken Ground  
which obliged us  
o deepen our Wa-  
or moderate clear  
Weather,



*Weather all the Voyage ; and tho' at a Council, they had agreed to search that Coast ; great Part of it being past in the Night, and having not been at any Time nearer the Islands or Head-lands than 5 or 6 Leagues,——*

*Capt. Middleton.*

The Reason I did not send the Boat on Shore to try the Tides, was too melancholy a one to be easily forgotten ; the greatest Part of our Men were not only sick, but had also lost the Use of their Limbs ; so that if I had mann'd the Boat, the remaining Hands would have been insufficient to have work'd the Ship,

or handled the Sails. The Truth of what I say will scarce be call'd in question, when it is known how many of these poor Creatures I was obliged to leave at the *Orkneys*, and how many of them since we came home, have been, and still are soliciting for Smart Tickets, most of which will, I fear, be for ever unerviceable to their Country and to themselves. If I had not impressed 8 or 9 Men at the *Orkneys*, as I then wrote to my Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty, I could not possibly have brought the Ship home, having not above 3 Men and 4 Officers who did Duty, that were able to come on Deck. But to return to the Tides ; they were so far from being neglected by me, that I tried them frequently,

Journal, *Aug.*  
12. Master's  
Ans. to Qu. 13.

and almost every Hour, as also the Currents, which I could do as well on board, or in a Boat near the Ship in the Channel, and much better than within Head-lands or near Islands, which, by forming Eddies, produce a Confusion and Irregularity in them, to which Cause is undoubtedly owing the gross Inconsistencies which abound in *Fox*, Mr. *D——*'s favourite Oracle. My Instructions ordered me

me

at a Council, they  
great Part of it  
not been at any  
lands than 5 or 6

Boat on Shore to  
a one to be easily  
atest Part of our  
sick, but had al-  
their Limbs; so  
n'd the Boat, the  
would have been  
work'd the Ship,  
of what I say will  
it is known how  
as obliged to leave  
of them since we  
are soliciting for  
ll, I fear, be for  
and to themselves.  
en at the *Orkneys*,  
missioners of the  
have brought the  
Men and 4 Officers  
o come on Deck.  
were so far from  
d them frequently,  
hour, as also the  
could do as well  
Boat near the Ship  
and much better  
lands, which, by  
sion and Irregula-  
ndoubtedly owing  
ound in *Fox*, Mr.  
structions ordered  
me

me to observe the Height, Course, and Direction  
of the Tides; but to observe them almost every  
Hour in all Places, as I did here, would not only  
have been quite incompatible with our ever return-  
ing home again, tho' I had tried but 20 Leagues of  
Coast, in such high Latitudes, where what is called  
Summer is so quickly over; but it would also have  
been altogether unnecessary. For wherever I judged  
it proper to examine, I never fail'd to do it, as at  
*Churchill Whale Cove* in Lat.  $62^{\circ} 20'$ , *Wager River*,  
and the *Frozen Straits*; and having the exact Course  
and Height of the Tides from my own Experience,  
at these Places, as also in all Parts of *Hudson's Bay*,  
I could not mistake the Floods for the Ebbs after-  
wards, by observing the Slacks, as Mr. D——,  
an utter Stranger to such Matters, has attempted to  
insinuate.

Mr. D——

—— the Ships having quit the Discovery in the Begin-  
ning of August, ——

Capt. Middleton.

Journals,  
Aug. 15. The Discovery was not quitted before  
the 15th of *August*, when we left *Brook  
Cobbam*. This Month is confessedly the  
fittest of all the Year, and the only one too, for  
making and perfecting Discoveries in these Parts;  
the Seas being then tolerably clear of Ice in some  
Years; for in others, there is no passing at all to  
the Northward of Lat.  $64^{\circ}$ . If I had staid longer  
than I did, how could I have expected to pass *Hud-  
son's Straits*, who well remember the Fate of one of  
our homeward bound Ships, which was lock'd up  
in Ice near *Mansfield Island* in the Middle of *Sep-  
tember*, where she lay confin'd three Weeks, and  
had her whole Crew almost frozen to Death. We  
usually pass the Straits homewards the latter End of  
*August*,

*August*, or the Beginning of *September* at farthest, and even then our Sails and Rigging are frozen to such a degree, that if a Top-sail be handed, we are two or three Days before we can get any Part of it set; but what Fresh-water-gentleman could ever imagine this in an easy Chair!

Since Mr. D—— is here again reiterating his Complaints of my Neglect of the Coast between *Whale Cove* and *Cape Dobbs*, I must observe, that tho' I did examine it carefully all along, as I have already set forth, yet was I no ways directed by my Instructions to do so.—Let me add, that southward of Latitude  $65^{\circ}$ , a Passage has been sought carefully and to no purpose for these three hundred Years and more. For *Button*, *Fox*, and many others since, have kept along Shore by Sea as far as  $65^{\circ}$ , and others still higher within Land; which is sufficient to put this Point quite out of Dilute.

Mr. D——.

— When almost all the Ice was dissolved in *Wager River*, and none to obstruct them to the southward of that River, that Month being the best Month in the Year to perfect the Discovery. The only pretended Reasons given by *Capt. Middleton* why he took *Wager Strait* for a River, were these; That the Tide flow'd into the Strait from the N. E. that it was full of Ice as far as the Ships went up, and somewhat higher, and therefore he took the Ice to be breaking up, as he went in; and that at a Point, near which they apprehended there was a Current or fresh Stream two Leagues from them, they apprehended the Water was brackish.

The first was no Reason; for if it was a Strait, the Tide of Flood must follow them westward, until they met the contrary Tide, and as probably they had not got half Way through, the Flood must necessarily follow them from the eastward.

ber at farthest, and  
are frozen to such  
ended, we are two  
ny Part of it set ;  
ould ever imagine

ain reiterating his  
he Coast between  
must observe, that  
along, as I have  
ys directed by my  
e add, that fourth-  
has been fought  
ese three hundred  
, and many others  
Sea as far as 65°,  
nd ; which is suf-  
of Dilpute.

dissolved in Wager  
to the southward of  
best Month in the  
The only pretended  
why he took Wager  
that the Tide flow'd  
it was full of Ice  
somewhat higher, and  
king up, as he went  
they apprehended  
two Leagues from  
was brackish.

it was a Strait, the  
westward, until they  
ably they had not got  
& necessarily follow

The

The second Reason why the Ice was but breaking up when they entered the River must be also false ; for none can imagine, that Whales in great Numbers should lie up the River under the Ice not broke up, and none at all below where it was broke up ; it appears also that there was much less Ice above than below. Nor can the third be a Reason, because the Water near a Stream they apprehended to be a fresh Current should be brackish, tho' that is controverted ; since there were great Openings into the River besides that Stream that they never tried, and no doubt the dissolving of the Snow from the Lands, as well as Ice, might lessen the Salt-ness of the Water at that Season in narrow Inlets.

Capt. Middleton.

Mr. D— having brought me back to Wager River, I must attend him there again. None of our Journals say, that the Ice was but just breaking up

July 15. Lieutenant went up to Deer-Sound, it was not indeed broke up in the Inlets and Bays, as his Report testifies, but did break whilst he was there ; yet assuredly it had been cleared away at the upper Part of the River some Time. If the River itself had not been broken up, we could not have got our Ships into it : But it is well known, that in all frozen Countries, the upper Ice of the Rivers is blown up and first of all gives way, from the Freshes produced by melted Snow, which also hurries the Ice downwards in Concurrence with the Stream, and out of the River's Mouth into the Bay or Ocean.

And now I am speaking of melted Snow, I cannot avoid remarking the Weakness of this Gentle-

E

man's

man's Conjecture, that these Dissolutions should so far take off the natural saline Quality of this imaginary Sea-water, in so wide and deep a Bason, as to render it but barely brackish; when it may be made appear, by an easy Computation, that such Addition can never amount to a thousandth Part of the total Content of the Water, and therefore must be altogether incapable of producing any sensible Alteration in its Taste.

Mr. D——.

— Another Reason he also alledged why it was a River was, that the Height of the Tide diminished the farther westward he went, as from 13 Feet, where the Ships lay, to 10 Feet at Dear-Sound, 10 Leagues higher, and to 6 Feet at the furthest Bluff Point the Boats were at; however this last was only computative, having not had time to make a full Trial; but this, if true, can be no Reason; for it proves just the same in Magellan Straits; by Narborough's Account the Tide on the east Side rises 4 Fathoms, within the second Narrow 10 Feet, and in the Middle, where the other Tide meets it, it rises but 8 or 9 Feet.

To make out this rapid Tide in Wager River, and to account for the Whales being there, and coming in by the Way the Ships entered, he alledges there was a great Tide flowed through a frozen Strait north eastward of Wager River, from Hudson's Strait by Cape Comfort, which was 18 to 20 Leagues long, from 4 to 10 wide, but filled with Islands, and fast froze from Side to Side, under which these Whales must have passed, and the Tide which filled not only the great Bay, above Cape Hope and Wager River, but also the whole Whale come, as far as the Point near Brook Cobham, where he supposes the southern Tide met it, and raised the great Tide there.

solutions should fo  
 quality of this ima-  
 deep a Bason, as  
 when it may be  
 outation, that such  
 a thousandth Part  
 ater, and therefore  
 producing any fen-

edged why it was a  
 the Tide diminished the  
 from 13 Feet, where  
 Sound, 10 Leagues  
 west Bluff Point the  
 east was only computa-  
 take a full Trial; but  
 for it proves just the  
 Narborough's Account  
 Fathoms, within the  
 the Middle, where the  
 8 or 9 Feet.  
 in Wager River, an  
 there, and coming in b  
 ledges there was a great  
 Strait north eastward  
 Strait by Cape Com  
 leagues long, from 4 to  
 and fast froze from Side  
 must have passed, an  
 great Bay, above Cap  
 also the whole We  
 Brook Cobham, where  
 it, and raised the gra

Capt. Middleton.

I do believe that my Conclusion, drawn from the lessening of the Rise of the Tide in ascending *Wager* River, will appear just to all who have been much experienced in such Affairs; yet I own, that the Instance of the Tides in the Strait of *Magellan*, which Mr. *D*—— brings from Sir *John Narborough*, admitting that they were duly observ'd, is an Exception to this general Rule, and has been often remark'd as the only known one of the kind. However, no one who has passed that Strait, takes the least Notice of any Brackishness or Freshness of the Water; tho' they all remark the Abundance of Trees on its Coasts. In a word, the several Phænomena and Properties of the River *Wager* do universally agree with those of all other Rivers where the Tide flows, in the known World.

Mr. D——.

In Answer to this it appears, that no Whales were seen near that Strait nor Bay above Cape Hope, nor any where near *Wager* River, at the east End, nor in the Welcome, until near Brook Cobham, and consequently the Presumption is strong, that the Whales never come in that Way. There are also strong Reasons to shew, that no Tide from Cape Frigid could cause the Tide in the River *Wager* ——

Capt. Middleton.

It is true, as Mr. *D*—— observes, that our People saw no Whales during our short Stay at the Frigid Strait, or in *Repulse Bay* above Cape Hope, tho' there might be great Numbers in shore which escaped our View, as those certainly would which I have said we saw off the Head Land in Latitude  $3^{\circ} 20'$ , if we had not been within five or six Miles of the Shore, and the abundance of Sea-horses and

Cap.



Seals which appeared every where thereabouts, is no small Indication that those Parts are not without Whales, since they are seldom seen in Numbers, but where Wales also come. I have already contradicted his Assertion, that none were seen near the east End of *Wager River*, by instancing three myself and others saw there.

Mr. D——.

—— and that it is highly probable, that there is no such Strait, and that it is only in Imagination, or calculated to serve that particular Purpose. For from the Observations he made in *Wager River*, where he stayed three Weeks, he could ascertain the Time of Tide at High-water, where the Ships lay in *Savage Sound*, which was fixed to a west-and-by-north Moon, making High-water.

Capt. Middleton.

He might as well have said, 'Tis likely *Hudson's Straits* is an imaginary one; as that, 'tis probable there is no such Place as the *Frigid Straits*. When

I was on Shore at *Cape Frigid*, I sent Log-Journal, the Carpenter and Gunner to the Top Aug. 8.

of the highest Mountain there, from whence they could overlook and take a distinct View of all the Straits to the southward, and the Land, Islands, and Bays all round. At their Return, I strictly examined them as to the Particulars they saw; whether they were positively sure that the low Beach joined to the Land we stood upon?

They assured me it did; that we were Master's An- on one Island cut off from the Beach; swer to Q. and that the *Frozen Straits*, of which 11. they delivered me a Plan next Morn-

ing on board, was at least twelve Leagues wide from the east to the west Side; and not less than four or five Leagues over at the Mouth or narrowest Part.

I could indeed see every thing very well from my

own

thereabouts, is  
 parts are not with-  
 in seen in Num-  
 I have already  
 ne were seen near  
 instancing three

le, that there is no  
 imagination, or cal-  
 ose. For from the  
 River, where be  
 in the Time of Tide  
 in Savage Sound,  
 rth Moon, making

is likely *Hudson's*  
 hat, 'tis probable  
 ill Straits. When  
*aps Frigid*, I sent  
 runner to the Top  
 ntain there, from  
 d take a distinct  
 uthward, and the  
 nd. At their Re-  
 s to the Particulars  
 ositively sure that  
 d we stood upon?  
 lid; that we were  
 f from the Beach;  
 Straits, of which  
 Plan next Morn-  
 Leagues wide from  
 t less than four or  
 or narrowest Part.  
 very well from my  
 own

own Station, except to the southward towards *Cape Comfort*, and the high Land that way; so that I was satisfied the *Frozen Strait* did not surround the Land we were upon: Besides had it been so, we could not have had a Tide so strong as four Miles an Hour, which had like to have halled the Ship into it. When I went on Shore we stood in within two Leagues of it; and were oblig'd, tho' the Wind blew a fresh Gale off the Mouth or Entrance of the Strait, to stand from it, thereby to prevent our being halled in among the Ice on the Ebb, and set off from it on the Flood. I left the Ship between nine and ten in the Morning, and got ashore by eleven, when I found the Water had fallen five or six Feet by the Shore, and noted it in my *Memorandum Book*. At my Return to the Boat at half an hour past 4 in the Afternoon, those who kept the Boat acquainted me, that it had flow'd four Feet, and I presently measured what Height it had to flow to the Marks of the last Tide, by a Pole set up at the Water's Side, and found that a Level continued from the said Marks to the Pole made twelve Feet, which added to the four Feet the Men had observed, made in all sixteen Feet for the whole Rise of the Tide; though by some Marks of Sea-weeds, &c. on the Shore, it appeared to have flow'd, upon extraordinary Circumstances, eight or ten Feet more. From the ebbing Water when I landed, I concluded the Time of High-water that Evening would be about 8 and 9 o'Clock, it being almost four Days after the full Moon, and consequently a W. or W. b.S. Moon made High-water, and not a N.W.b.N. Moon, as Mr. D——'s, the better to suit his purpose, would have it.

Master's An-  
 swer to Qu-  
 II.

Mr.



Mr. D——.

*He tried the Tide when he was on shore at Cape Frigid, where he supposed the Frozen Strait, on Sunday the eighth of August, and found it Low-water at seven at Night, just at Sun-set as he affirms; the Moon was at full the fifth at six in the Morning in London; so allowing for the Difference of Longitude, it was then three Days and eighteen Hours after the Full; so that taking three Hours for the Difference of the Tide in that time, it was Low-water at full Moon, at four in the Evening, which was a S.W.b.W. Moon that made Low-water, consequently a N.W.b.N. Moon made High-water there, which was four Points or three Hours later than the Tide in Wager River, and consequently could not be caused by that Tide.*

Capt. Middleton.

I must here however do Mr. D—— the Justice to confess, that when he ask'd me at my Lodgings, the only time he was pleased to call since my Return, how it flow'd there on Sunday the eighth of August; having not my Memorandum Book at hand, I answer'd him, That, to the best of my Memory, it was High-water just at Sun-set, about seven a-Clock: whereas I should have said a little after eight, the Sun setting at that time; and if, as he relates, I said Low-water, that was an inadvertent Blunder, for which I ask his Pardon.

Mr. D——.

*He also found at Brook Cobham, that a West or W.b.N. Moon made High-water there, and therefore that Tide could not flow from Cape Frigid, as he alleges from his Journal.*

Capt.

s'on shore at Cape  
een Strait, on Sun-  
ad it Low-water at  
e affirms; the Moon  
orning in London;  
Longitude, it was  
fter the Full, so that  
ce of the Tide in that  
Moon, at four in the  
Moon that made  
V.b.N. Moon made  
our Points or three  
ger River, and con-  
Tide.

n.  
D—— the Justice  
ne at my Lodgings,  
o call since my Re-  
unday the eighth of  
ndum-Book at hand,  
est of my Memory,  
-set, about seven a-  
e said a little after  
ime; and if, as he  
was an inadvertent  
rdon.

am, that a West or  
there, and therefore  
pe Frigid, as he al-

Capt.

Capt. Middleton.

Master's An-  
wer to Qu.  
11.  
But to return to the Tides: Those  
who were on board perceived no Tide,  
either of Ebb or Flood between the  
low Beach and *Cape Frigid*, whilst they  
were driving and working to wait for the Boat;  
whereas if the Land of that Cape had been an Island  
cut off from the low Beach, the strong Tide would  
have come round it. But I lying open off the  
Bay formed by the low Beach and *Cape Frigid*, se-  
veral Hours after my returning on board, found  
no Appearance of any Tide that Way.

After all, were I to grant him his Tide at *Cape  
Frigid*, how much could that avail him? It is not  
possible to account for all the Anomalies and Pec-  
uliarities of Tides, without an accurate Knowledge of  
the almost infinite Causes and Circumstances to  
which they may be owing; as I wrote  
to him in *November* last. Though it  
flows E.S.E. at *Resolution*, and S.b.E.  
at *Cape Diggs*, making five Points in  
spanning 130 Leagues, yet it amounts but to a single  
point in going down to *Albany* and *Moose River*;  
for there it flows S. and the Distance is 250 Leagues.  
Again, from *Humber* to *Cromer*, on the *Lincolnshire*  
Coast, is but 14 Leagues; yet at the former it flows  
V.b.S. and at the latter N.W. Likewise at the  
*Orkneys* it flows S.S.E. and the very same at *Orford-  
ness*. I could bring hundreds of other Instances  
from my own Experience; so that where Tides  
flow into deep Bays, and are obstructed by Islands,  
or counter Tides, no Rules can be fix'd.

The late learned Dr. *Halley*, in his excellent Il-  
lustration of Sir *Isaac Newton's* Theory of the Tides,  
has set this Matter in a very just Light. And be-  
cause he was not only extremely well versed in the  
Philosophy of the Ocean, but also a most expert  
Seaman,

Seaman, I shall not scruple to transcribe his Words.

Speaking of the Phænomena of the Tides, according to the pure Laws of Gravity, he says, —“ All these things would regularly come to pass, “ if the whole Earth were covered with Sea very “ deep : But by reason of the Shoalness of some “ Places, and the Narrowness of the Straits thro’ “ which the Tides are in many Cases propagated, “ there arises a great Diversity in the Effect, not to “ be accounted for without an exact Knowledge of “ the Circumstances of the Places; as of the Posi- “ tion of the Land, and the Breadth and Depth “ of the Channels, by which the Tide flows : For “ a very slow and imperceptible Motion of the “ whole Body of the Water, where it is, for ex- “ ample, two Miles deep, will suffice to raise its “ Surface ten or twelve Feet in a Tide’s time; “ whereas if the same Quantity of Water were to “ be convey’d upon a Channel of forty Fathoms “ deep, it would require a very great Stream to “ effect it in so large Inlets as are the Channels of “ England, or the German Ocean, &c.” *Philoso- phical Transactions.* N<sup>o</sup>. 226.

Mr. D——.

*It appears also that on the sixth of July, as he was standing off and on a Head Land in about 63° 20'. At five in the Morning, he lower’d the Boat to try the Current, and found it set N.N.E. two Knots two Fathoms, it being then full Moon, and a W. or W.b.N. Moon making High-water there and at Brook Cobham, and it being then a W.b.S. Moon, it was then flowing Water, and the Current setting slowly N.N.E. the Flood must have come from the S.W. and not from the N.E.b.E. as he afterwards pretends, and consequently a Tide might have come from the south-westward from some Inlet,——*

Mr

Capt. *Middleton*.

to transcribe his

of the Tides, according to Gravity, he says, particularly come to pass, and are very different from the Shoalness of some of the Straits thro' the Cases propagated, and the Effect, not to exact Knowledge of the Causes; as of the Position, Breadth and Depth of the Tide flows: For the Motion of the Water where it is, for example will suffice to raise it in a Tide's time; if the Quantity of Water were to be equal of forty Fathoms, or a very great Stream to the Sea, are the Channels of the Ocean, &c." *Philoso-*

For want of Experience in the Nature of Tides and their Course, and a strong Desire of bringing the Flood out of some Suppositious Inlet on the Western Coast, he criticizes my Observation of July 6<sup>th</sup> endeavouring to invert the true Course. Here as usual, he keeps up strictly to Rule and Theory. But those who have been much in Practice will inform him, that upon all Coasts where the Tides flow, they are frequently found to vary their Course a small Hour, and sometimes an Hour and half, just as they happen to be accelerated or retarded by concurring or adverse Winds; I do not mean blowing on the Coast where the Observation is made, but at a remote Distance: These, I say, do produce various Irregularities in their Height and Length of Flowing, in one and the same Place, and under the very same lunar Circumstances. I have known, for instance, that in the River *Thames* it has out-lets its Course two Hours, and ebb'd and flow'd two or three times in one Tide, and all from Winds. I must observe, that Mr. D—— in this Remark has no less than twice miscopied my Log-Book, setting down two Knots two Fathoms, for two Fathoms only, and five instead of six o'Clock.

Mr. D——

10<sup>th</sup> of July, as he was  
d in about 63° 20'.  
d the Boat to try the  
N.E. two Knots run  
n, and a W. or W.b.N.  
and at Brook Cobham  
on, it was then flowing  
ng slowly N.N.E. thro'  
the S.W. and not from  
ds pretends, and consi-  
me from the south-west

it being the same Place where he afterwards  
the Whales. It appears also, that he sent the  
tenant and Master in the Boat, when he was in  
er River, to look out for a Cove or Place of Safe-  
the Ships, in case they could not get out in one  
lest they should be carried up again by the Rapi-  
of the Tide, upon the Return of the Flood, it run-  
at the Rate of 6 to 9 Miles in an Hour,——

Capt. *Middleton*.

he closes his Remark with another Touch upon  
the

Mr.

the Whales, his constant Pilots ; I presume I have said enough upon this Point already, Pag. 14.

Mr. D——

— the Boat was carried out along with the Ice, by the great Current of the Ebb, directly by the South-west Shore, S. E. towards Cape Dobbs, and at the Turn of the Tide at low Water, they got out of the Stream into the Eddy Tide, on the N. Shore, and came up again with the Flood.

Capt. Middleton.

He hath misrepresented the Affair of the Boat being carried out of *Wager* River by the Current of the Ebb. She was carried S. E. by the Ebb, as the Tide sets, along the South Shore, 4 or 5 Leagues, and no more, and then she came into the Eddy, occasioned by the Ebb from the West S. round Cape Dobbs. I tried the Current of the Ebb a Day before the Full Moon and found it to run 5 Knots and no more. Mr. D—— speaks of 9 Knots. I know of no such Current in the World. *London* Bridge scarce runs so much.

Master's Anf.  
to Qu. 6. Lieu-  
tenant's Rep.  
July 27. App.  
VIII. Journal  
July 27.

Mr. D——

It appears also upon the Ships going out of the River that to prevent their being forced back again by the Return of the Tide of Flood, they made their Course as far as they could towards the North-east, to be out of the Current of the Tide of Flood, which must be a Evidence that the Tide of Flood came from the South-westward, round Cape Dobbs to the River *Wager* for had it came from the North-east, by the supposed frozen Strait, they must, by standing that Course, be directly in the Way of the Tide of Flood to carry them back again into the River,——

Capt.

Capt. Middleton.

On the 4th of *August*, at 6 o'Clock in the Evening, we came down the River *Wager* as far as the lower Islands. The Water had then ebb'd one Foot, as all our Journals and Logg Books mention. By eight it was calm, and being then just out of the River's Mouth, we made all the Way we could, the Boats towing the Ship, which was also rowed with Oars, whilst we had the Ebb Tide helping us, which set us Eastward between the two Lands which form the Entrance of the River. By 12 we were got 4 Leagues out of the River, as also, out of the Indraught of the River's Tide, the Calm continuing these last 4 Hours, and the Flood Tide just coming from the Eastward at 1, did not run above 2 Knots; for the Indraught of the Tide of Rivers has very little Effect, at the Distance of 3 or 4 Leagues. From 12 to 2 we had a small Breeze at S. and stood E. S. E. 5 Miles; and from 2 to 4 E. 3 Miles: At 6 it was almost calm.

Mr. D——

— and to have avoided that, they ought to have made their Course towards Cape Dobbs, that the Tide Flood might have carried them to the Southward. The Captain, Clerk, Carpenter, and Gunner, went on shore at Cape Frigid to view the Land and supposed frozen Strait; the Carpenter and Gunner went to a Hill a Mile and half further than the Captain and Clerk, and upon their Return, as the Clerk affirms, they said the Hill they were upon was an Island, but a low beachy Land to southward of them was joined to the Eastern and Northern Land, which joined the West Land, and formed the Bay above Cape Hope, and that there was no frozen Strait to South-eastward of them, as the Captain has laid down in his Journal,



and consequently no Tide could flow through it from the N. W. of Hudfon's Strait by Cape Comfort.

Capt. Middleton.

Now this Gentleman is of Opinion we ought to have gone towards Cape *Dobbs*, quite back again: How then could we have avoided being forced ashore among all the Ice that lay off the Cape, or again into the River? When we could lay only W. S. W. and S. W. on the other Tack, the Wind being South and S. S. E. and the Flood coming strong from the E. and E. b. N. This surely had been a fine Way of meeting the Flood, and keeping to my Instructions.

What I have said before (Page 28.) I believe may be fully sufficient to evince the Reality of the *Frozen Strait*; yet I will add, that if, according to Mr. *D*——, there be no such Strait, whence should the strong Tide of 4 Miles an Hour, which we met with there, come, and which the Lieutenant observed to force the Ships very rapidly to the North eastward, in lying to about 10 o'Clock in the

Morning, as the Clerk affirms? where  
 Anf. to Qu. 2. adds, that it must be a Flood Tide tho' we afterwards found by the Shore that it was an Ebb, and that it had flowed near 8 in the Morning, as I have mentioned before. This is the Effect of Ignorance, or something worse.

Mr. *D*—— is for denying a Passage to the Tides by stopping up the Straits with Islands, which is somewhat like stopping up the *Thames* with *London Bridge*; for tho' our Journals mention the narrowest Part to be but 4 or 5 Leagues wide, yet that is by no means to be understood of the Distance from Main to Main, but between Islands and Islands which lye off from the Shores. The Main-lands, which include this Strait, are very high, and there-  
 fore



rough it from the  
Comfort.

inion we ought to  
quite back again:  
ed being forced a-  
off the Cape, or  
we could lay only  
r Tack, the Wind  
the Flood coming  
This surely had  
Flood, and keeping

Page 28.) I believe  
e the Reality of the  
that if, according to  
trait, whence should  
Hour, which we met  
the Lieutenant ob-  
rapidly to the North  
10 o'Clock in the  
Clerk affirms? what  
ft be a Flood Tide  
ords found by the  
that it had flowe  
have mentioned be  
ignorance, or some

Passage to the Tides  
h Islands, which  
*Thames* with *London*  
mention the narrow  
ues wide, yet that  
of the Distance from  
Islands and Island  
. The Main-lands  
ery high, and there  
fort

fore may be 3 or 4 Leagues more asunder than by  
our Guess; for determining the Distance of Lands  
at Sea is no other than guessing; however, I am  
sure the Interstices between the Islands, where nar-  
rowest, are 4 or 5 Leagues, and may be more.

Mr. D——

— *There being no Tide or Current in the Bay be-  
yond Cape Hope, is a further Reason that the Tide  
did not flow in that Way, for that Bay would have  
been directly in the Way of the Tide; but if the Tide  
of Flood came from the South-west, it was a very good  
Reason why there was no Tide or Current there, it  
having no further to flow that Way. Nor can it be  
presum'd that so rapid a Tide, and so great a Quantity  
of Water should flow through so narrow a Strait, which  
in some Places was not 4 Leagues wide, and almost fil-  
led with the Islands, so that the Water, considering the  
Islands within it, was not 2 Leagues wide, so as to  
fill the Bay above Cape Hope, Wager River, which  
was 8 or 10 Leagues wide, and all the Welcome—*

Capt. Middleton.

That there is no Tide or Current in *Repulse Bay*,  
is no Reason why the Tide did not flow in at the  
*Frozen Strait*. The Tide did point directly to the  
Bay; but it is a well known Property of the Tides,  
that in Bays, where the Current of the Tide has no  
Outlet, it will swell by the Shore, but retain at the  
same Time such a Stagnation, as gives the same  
Resistance to the Current, as the Shores themselves  
give; and for this Reason no Tides are ever discern-  
ed in Bays. Even in the River *Thames*, the Water-  
men and all Craft are known to keep on from Point  
to Point, as the Tide sets, to keep in the Stream  
of it. Now this Gentleman would have it, that  
*Wager River*, where the Strait is but 7 Miles wide,  
is fairer for filling the *Welcome*, and all these  
Bays, than the *Frozen Strait*, of as many Leagues,  
which is much nearer the Eastern Ocean.

Mr.

Mr. D—

— as far as the Point near Brook Cobham, where the Captain owns there was a rapid Tide, and alledges the southern Tide met the other there, altho' it appears that the Eastern Tide was lost in the Bay, and could not raise a high Tide there, it being also agreed, that a North-westerly Wind at Churchill, raises a higher Tide at Neap, than an easterly Wind does at Spring Tides, all these confirm that a westerly Tide must occasion so great Tides in that Part of the Bay—

Capt. Middleton.

Near Brook Cobham, I own, the Tide ran two Knots and no more at a Full Moon; and I have found it run the same or more Knots between Churchhill and York Fort; and upon trying the Tide about 8 in the Morning between Wager River and Cape Hope, we found the Ebb 4 or 5

Logg Journal,  
Aug. 5.

Miles an Hour, in such Eddies and Whirlings, that the Ships could hardly steer. The Ebb set E. b. S. by Compass: The first Trial, in bringing up the Boat, the Master lost one of our small Graplings, the Strength of the Ebb breaking a new twelve Thread Rope. He came on board again and got another, and upon the second Trial found it 4 Knots. We made no less than twenty Trials in going forwards and backwards between Wager River and Cape Frigid, but found it no where half so strong as in the Narrow of the New Strait, except at Cape Frigid and the Mouth of Wager River. I observed the last Time I was

Mackbeath's  
Affidavit. Ap-  
pend. XXI.

at Churchhill, and had it confirmed by Officers who had been there and at Fort York above 15 Years, that a North, and a North-east Wind, made a higher Neap Tide, than a South, or South-west Wind did a Spring Tide, which is a Confirmation that

that the Tide comes through the *Frozen Strait* from *Baffin's Bay*, &c.

Mr. D—

— and since no *Whales* were ever seen in any other Part of the Bay, or in *Hudson's Streights*, but near the *East-entrance*, as they pass up to *Davis's Straits*, and that all true black *Whales* go in the Winter to warm Latitudes; all these Things considered, is almost a Demonstration that these *Whales* come from the *Western Ocean*, and that the rapid Tides near the *Welcome*, proceed from the same. The Captain, to evade the Force of this Argument about the *Whales*, says, that tho' he never saw any *Whales* in the Strait or Bay, he has however, got *Whale-fin* lately taken from the *Indians*, on the *East Main*, and therefore *Whales* must have been there. To this I answer, that since the *Eskimaux Indians* kill *Whales* on the *North-west Side* of the Bay, where the Company trade with them for *Fin* and *Oil*, the Presumption is, that some who have been wounded by them, have got away, and died, and by the *North-westerly Winds* have been driven to the *East Main*; and there the *Fin* was got by the *Natives*.—

Capt. Middleton.

Here again he is drawing Conclusions from the *Whales*, which he will needs have to come out of the *Western Ocean*, as well as the Tides; tho', as to the latter, all Journals contradict him. He insists also, that all the *Bone* which is traded from the *Natives* near the *East Main*, must be of *Fishes* which died of Wounds they received near the *West Main*, and are driven this Way by *North-west Winds*. But I have observed before (Page 16.), that the *Fin* drops out of their Mouths in 10 or 12 Days after they are dead, and that it would take up more than a Year to drive them so great a Distance;

to

Cobham, where  
Tide, and alledges  
alibo' it appears  
e Bay, and could  
also agreed, that  
, raises a bigger  
nd does at Spring  
ly Tide must occa-  
e Bay—

the Tide ran two  
oon; and I have  
e Knots between  
on trying the Tide  
Wager River and  
d the Ebb 4 or 5  
such Eddies and  
Ships could hard-  
y Compass: The  
Boat, the Master  
the Strength of the  
hread Rope. He  
ther, and upon the  
We made no less  
rds and backwards  
*Frigid*, but found  
the Narrow of the  
id and the Mouth  
e last Time I was  
ad it confirmed by  
been there and at  
5 Years, that a  
-east Wind, made  
th, or South-west  
is a Confirmation  
that

to which may be added, that *Hudson's Bay* is not clear of Ice two Months in twelve.

At *Whale Cove* it flows W. N. W. at *Brook Cobham* W. or W. b. N. at *River Wager* W. The Flood Tide comes the Course of the *Welcome* from the Eastward in all these Places, which may be proved from our Journals.

If there were any Passage between *Churchill* and *Whalebone Point*, near Lat.  $65^{\circ}$ , it would have been long enough ago found out, by one or another of all those who have been that Way; some of them several Years together; as Sir *Thomas Button* and *Fox*; Governor *Kelsey*, three or four Voyages, the last in my Memory; *Napper*, *Handcock*, Governor *Knight*, *Vaughan*, and *Scroggs*; who went to trade and make Discoveries in all the Bays, Coves, and Creeks along Shore, several of whom harboured every Night; and Governor *Kelsey* exchanged two of his own *Indians* for two *Esquimaux*, kept them at *Fort York* a whole Year, learned them some *English*, and then returned them to their Friends. Afterwards, as he went along that Coast, he saw and spoke with them several Times, but could get no Intelligence from them which afforded him the least Probability of a Passage. Of all this I furnished Mr. D—— with the most exact and particular Account I was able to give him several Years ago: But no Matters of Fact have Power to convince him; and his Scheme rests entirely upon Presumptions, which all Observations and Experience directly contradict. I have perused all the Company's Journals about this Discovery, as well as all others I was able to procure, whether in Print or Manuscript, from the Year 1615 down to the present Time. My Inclination has led me that Way these many Years, as much or more than his, or almost any Man's living, as all my Acquaintance, and himself too, know very well. I winter'd at *Churchill*

*Hudson's Bay* is not  
ve.  
N. W. at Brook  
Wager W. The  
the *Welcome* from  
s, which may be

ween *Churchill* and  
°, it would have  
by one or another  
Way ; some of  
Sir *Thomas Button*  
e or four Voyages,  
er, *Handcock*, *Go-*  
*oggs* ; who went to  
all the Bays, Coves,  
of whom harboured  
*Wesley* exchanged two  
*naux*, kept them at  
them some *English*,  
ir Friends. After-  
Coast, he saw and  
but could get no  
afforded him the  
Of all this I fur-  
bt exact and parti-  
e him several Years  
have Power to con-  
rests entirely upon  
ations and Experi-  
ve perused all the  
Discovery, as well as  
whether in Print or  
5 down to the pre-  
s led me that Way  
more than his, or al-  
y Acquaintance, and  
winter'd at *Clourchill*  
for

for this purpose in 1721, and made all possible En-  
quiry then, as well as the last Year, among all the  
*Indians* and *English* who had travelled Inland to the  
northward ; and I am thoroughly satisfied that any  
further Search must be fruitless, either by Sea or  
Land. Nor does it appear, that Mr. *D*—— him-  
self so much as dream'd of any such thing before I  
last went out ; else why was he not careful to have  
it inserted among my Instructions ; whereas instead  
thereof I was strictly ordered to begin at *Whale-*  
*Point*, and search to the northward, still meet-  
ing the Tide of Flood, whether it should come from  
the eastward or westward.

*Mr. D*——.

*As a further Confirmation of a Strait or Passage*  
*near the Welcom, the northern Indians who came to*  
*Churchill, as well as those who were on board Scroggs,*  
*and those lately on board Capt. Middleton, said, there*  
*was a large Copper-mine upon a Strait northward of*  
*the Country which went westward, that they could*  
*send a Sloop to lay her Side to it, and take it on*  
*board, and traced the Coast upon a Deer-skin to be*  
*near the Welcome, and the Indians with Scroggs*  
*offered to go on Shore near Cape Fullerton, saying they*  
*were near it, and within three or four Days Journey of*  
*their own Country, but he could not part with them.*

*Capt. Middleton.*

All the *Indians* I have ever convers'd with, who  
at the Copper-mine, agree in this ; That they  
two Summers going thither, pointing towards  
north-west and Sun-setting, when at *Churchill* ;  
that where this Mine is, the Sun, at a certain  
Season of the Year, keeps running round the Ho-  
rizon several times together, without setting. Now  
know from the Principles of Cosmography, that  
cannot be true of any Place, whose Latitude is

less than 67 or 68 Degrees, even allowing for the Effects of Refraction: And if the Credibility of the Testimony of these simple *Indians* be called in question, I can mention that of Mr. *Norton*, who was Governor at *Churchill* above twenty Years, and had travelled almost a Year north-westward by Land with this Country *Indians*. This Gentleman has often affirmed the same thing of the Sun; and that in his whole Journey he met with no Salt River nor Tree, nor Shrub, but only Moss; and that he and his Retinue were reduced to such Extremity to eat Moss several Days; having nothing else that could serve them for Sustenance but their Leather Breeches, which they eat up also. Now it will appear, from a just trigonometrical Computation, that *Churchill* being in Latitude  $59^{\circ}$ , and the Mine Latitude  $67^{\circ}$ , and the Bearing N. W. the Difference of Longitude between *Churchill* and the Mine is  $17^{\circ} 45'$ . But *Wager* River's Entrance being in Latitude  $65^{\circ} 20'$ , and 10 Degrees of Longitude east of *Churchill*, the Difference of Longitude between the Mouth of the River and the Mine is  $27^{\circ} 45'$ , and their Distance in the Arch of a great Circle, or their nearest Distance, no less than 700 Miles. From what I have here made out concerning this Mine and the Way to it, upon the Report of the *Indians* and of Governor *Norton*, it follows, even to Demonstration,

1<sup>st</sup>. That neither *Wager* River, nor any other River or Sea does extend so far westward, from the Part of *Hudson's-Bay* in less than Latitude  $65^{\circ}$  to cross the Rout that lies between *Wager* River and the Mine. And,

2<sup>dly</sup>, That if there be any Passage at all, it must run up so high northward, as to cross the Parallel  $67^{\circ}$  on the east Side the Mine, and consequently must be frozen up, and absolutely unnavigable the whole Year.



ven allowing for the  
if the Credibility o  
*Indians* be called i  
of Mr. *Norton*, wh  
ve twenty Years, an  
th-westward by La  
This Gentleman ha  
of the Sun ; and th  
t with no Salt Rive  
ly Moss ; and that  
l to such Extremity  
aving nothing else th  
nce but their Leath  
also. Now it will a  
cal Computation, th  
59°, and the Mine  
g N.W. the Differen  
*Churchill* and the Mine  
er's Entrance being  
egrees of Longitude  
of Longitude betw  
d the Mine is 27° 4  
ch of a great Circle,  
s than 700 Miles. Fr  
concerning this M  
e Report of the *Indi*  
t follows, even to

River, nor any o  
far westward, from  
s than Latitude 65°  
etween *Wager* River

y Passage at all, it  
as to cross the Paralle  
Mine, and consequ  
solutely unnavigable

But, after all, a Passage is Mr. *D*——'s Philoso-  
fer's Stone, and must be sought for till found.  
If you miss at *Brook Cobham* and *Wager* River the  
next Bout, then try *Nelson* and *Churchill* Rivers.  
(See his Letter of *November 19. Append. XIII.*)

With all my heart, say I, for my own sake ! pro-  
posed Mr. *D*—— himself accompanies the Ex-  
pedition, to see that there be no Neglect or Con-  
tempt : And in his Voyage it may not be amiss  
for him to consider the following Particulars.

*Hudson's* Strait is fourteen Leagues wide at the  
Entrance ; forty Leagues up it is thirty Leagues  
over ; and the nearest Distance between *Cape Wal-*  
*ingham* and *Nottingham* Isle is twelve Leagues ; the  
whole Length being about 130 Leagues. Many  
Years we cannot pass the Strait outward-bound be-  
fore the latter End of *August*, and then with incre-  
dible Fatigue, and perpetual Danger of losing Lives  
Ships. Two out of three were lost within these  
seven Years. After passing the Strait, there is  
the Bay to cross, in which I was detained no  
more than six Weeks in Ice, the last Voyage I under-  
took for the Company. I never was able to arrive  
at the Factory above five or six times before the 20th  
of *August*, in three and twenty Voyages I have made  
the same : And it is a standing Order not to attempt  
to come back the same Year, unless we can sail from  
the Forts by the tenth of *September*. Till a little  
more than twenty Years ago, a Voyage was seldom made  
without Wintering.

Now supposing there were another Strait 'on the  
Northern Coast of *Hudson's* Straits, or between La-  
titude 61° and 63°, and that this Strait were about  
the same Length and as wide as that.

In the first place, there could be no entering it  
before the latter End of *August* for Ice, whether  
in *England* or your Wintering-place in the Bay :  
though we got at *Churchill* River by the first



Day of *July* last Year, yet the like has not been known these twenty Years, by a Fortnight at least. But notwithstanding so favourable a Winter, and early a Spring, had we not work'd Night and Day Tides, from the Beginning of *April* to the Middle of *June* with infinite Labour in cutting out our Ships, which were bedded twenty-three Feet in the Ice and hard frozen Snow, as may be seen in the Journals, we should not have got out so soon by Month. After all, this was of no Service in forwarding us; for being got into Bay, we found the Shores lined with Ice for many Leagues, so that no Opening could be entered; and the great Rivers and Straits, beyond 61 Degrees, are full of Ice until the Middle or latter End of *August*, and many Years not clear at all. I have been fast myself in *Hudson's Straits* for some Days in *September*, till a north-west Wind happened to set me and the Ice going together. Of all the Sloops in my time which the Company have sent almost every Year along the Coast towards the *Welcome*, either upon Trade or Discovery, none but *Scrogg's* could ever get beyond Latitude  $64^{\circ}$  for Ice; and since the Year 1718 they have lost two Sloops and a Ship that Way. Many of them could not get beyond  $62^{\circ} 20'$ . Now is this well weigh'd, what Chance have Ships for passing such a Strait as we have supposed?

But grant there was no Ice to prevent a Ship passing about the latter End of *August*, yet at that Season the Winter begins to set in here, with heavy Gales and such Quantities of drifting Snow, that it is out of all human Power to handle a Sail, or keep the Deck.

Mr. D\_\_\_\_\_

The Lieutenant, when he was on Shore near *Dixon's Sound* in *Wager River*, set an Opening by his Compass S. W. of him, on the west Side of a Strait betwixt

e like has not been  
 a Fortnight at least,  
 rable a Winter, and  
 ork'd Night and Day  
 April to the Middle  
 in cutting out our  
 enty-three Feet in the  
 s may be seen in the  
 got out so soon by  
 of no Service in for  
 into Bay, we found a  
 many Leagues, so the  
 d ; and the great R  
 Degrees, are full of  
 d of *August*, and ma  
 ve been fast myself  
 days in *September*, till  
 to set me and the Ice  
 oops in my time whi  
 fit every Year along  
 either upon Trade  
 could ever get beyo  
 nee the Year 1718 th  
 Ship that Way. May  
 ond 62° 20'. Now  
 nce have Ships for p  
 re supposed?  
 ce to prevent a Ship  
 d of *August*, yet at th  
 o set in here, with h  
 f drifting Snow, that  
 o handle a Sail, or ke

high Bluff Point, and a lower Point. This Inlet  
 was opposite to the Place where the most Whales were  
 seen, and was never enquired into or proceeded upon by  
 the Captain, although acquainted with it, nor the O-  
 pening among the Islands to the north-westward, be-  
 yond the Place the Lieutenant went to, although the  
 Lieutenant and Master, under their Hands, reported  
 they believed there was another Way into the Sea, than  
 the Way the Ships entered, by which the Whales came  
 there, and found little or no Ice to obstruct their going  
 further, there being much less Ice to the westward,  
 than was at the Mouth of the River.

Capt. Middleton.

I have the Lieutenant's Paper about this Bluff  
 Point still in my Possession, and a very odd one I  
 think it is, at least far beyond my Comprehension ;  
 however I beg leave to submit it to the Opinion  
 of my Lords Commissioners, as it is a  
 Sample of his other Reports. 'Tis  
 hard to conceive how on the Bearings  
 mentioned, any Object could be seen, except on  
 the east Shore, being that whereon he stood ; for  
 the River lies nearly north and south by Compass:  
*D*——— says it was opposite to the Place  
 where most of the Whales were seen ; which should  
 be somewhere against *Deer Sound* ; but I could dis-  
 tinguish nothing thereabouts, which in the least  
 answered the Description.

The Lieutenant and Master in the  
 Report delivered me, signed with their  
 own Hands, say, That they believe  
 there is another Way into the Sea,  
 besides that which our Ships came in, at some where  
 on the east Side ; and that they imagine the Whales  
 came through this Passage. Indeed  
 they were sent up on purpose to search  
 for such a Passage, and to meet the  
 Flood

was on Shore near D  
 an Opening by his Co  
 st Side of a Strait bet

Flood, for fear we should not have the River's Mouth clear of Ice before the Winter set in upon us, and so all perish there. For after I had, for the Reasons before recited, given up all Hopes of a Passage through this River, I must confess I would have parted with all I had in the World to have been out of it again.

Mr. D——.

*The Captain, before he went the Voyage, was offer'd by some of the Directors of the Company 5000 l. to return to their Service, and not go the Voyage; or to go search for the Passage in Davis's Straits, or in any other Place but where he was directed: To which he answered, He might take their Money and be of no Service to them; for the Gentleman who had projected the Voyage, had it so much at heart, that if he did not go, he would get somebody else to go; but before he had done with it, he hoped to go in a Coach and Six: To which one of them answer'd, He hop'd to see him at the Devil first. —*

Capt. Middleton.

I deny, my Lords, that any of the Directors, either by themselves or others, offer'd me five thousand Pounds, or even one Shilling, to return to their Service, and not go the Voyage; or to go search for the Passage in *Davis's* Straits, or in any other Place but where I was directed: And granting such an Offer was made, Mr. D— acquits me of any Crime by the Answer, he says, I made (or rather, that he in this place is so kind to make for me) *viz.* “That I might take their Money and be  
“of no Service to them; for the Gentleman who  
“projected the Voyage, had it so much at heart,  
“that if I did not go, he would get somebody else  
“to go.” What follows, about my Hopes to ride in a Coach and Six, and somebody's wishing me at the Devil, is such idle Trumpery, that I cannot induce

have the River's  
Winter set in upon  
after I had, for  
up all Hopes of a  
Ist confers I would  
the World to have

Voyage, was offer'd  
pany 5000 l. to re-  
be Voyage; or to go  
Straits, or in any  
ected: To which he  
Money and be of no  
an who had projected  
rt, that if he did not  
go; but before he had  
Coach and Six: To  
hop'd to see him at

of the Directors,  
rs, offer'd me five  
the Shilling, to re-  
go the Voyage; or  
Davis's Straits, or in  
was directed: And  
Mr. D—acquits me  
he says, I made (or  
so kind to make for  
their Money and be  
the Gentleman who  
t so much at heart,  
d get somebody else  
t my Hopes to ride  
ody's wishing me at  
ry, that I cannot in-  
duce

duce myself to imagine your Lordships believe it  
deserves a serious Answer; and I am surpriz'd the  
Projector himself should think so.—

Mr. D—

— They afterwards, by Sir Bibye Lake their Go-  
vernor, promised him two Years Salary, at 120 l. per  
Ann. not to do any thing to prejudice or obstruct their  
Trade, which he says was only upon Account of prevent-  
ing his Crew's trading in the Bay.—

Capt. Middleton.

Again, had I through Vanity, or any other Mo-  
tive, been so foolish and wicked to assert I was of-  
fer'd 5000 l. to quit the King's Service; yet I pre-  
sume your Lordships will not apprehend my Refusal  
of so large a Bribe redounds to my Disreputation:  
Besides, such a Refusal makes it senseless and absurd  
to suppose, that I should accept of so paltry a Con-  
sideration as two Years Salary, at 120 l. per Annum,  
to neglect my Duty in prosecuting the Discovery;  
when the very same Persons, at the same time,  
were offering me 5000 l. to return to a very benefi-  
cial Employment.

I readily grant, that the Governor and Directors  
of the Company recommended the Protection of  
their Trade to me. In them it was a very natural  
and a reasonable Request; and, for my part, I es-  
teem'd it the Duty of my Station to maintain them  
as far as I had Power and Authority, in the Rights  
and Privileges which were granted them by one of  
his Majesty's Royal Predecessors. Besides, when  
they had been so generous to allow me to winter at  
one of their Factories, it would have been a mean  
and base Return for their Hospitality, as well as  
the highest Ingratitude, to rob and plunder them,  
either by trading with the Natives myself, or suf-  
fering others under me to trade with them; though

I freely confefs great Advantages might have accrued by it.

Mr. D——.

— so that 'tis plain Rewards or Bribes were offer'd to him, to prevent his perfecting the Discovery, and every Omission or Neglect laid him open to be suspected.

Capt. Middleton.

Mr. D—— concludes this Paragraph with asserting, that “ 'Tis plain Rewards or Bribes were offered him, to prevent his perfecting the Discovery.” What then? Does he not make it also as plain that I refused Bribes, if any were offered? But how comes it to be so plain that they were offer'd? Neither the Lieutenant, Surgeon, nor Clerk charge me with any Bribes; and will your Lordships think a bare Assertion, from one that appears now to be my Enemy, a sufficient Proof? I hope not.

The Truth is, Mr. D——'s large Professions of Sincerity and Friendship, once induc'd me to place great Confidence in him, and unbosom myself freely to him; and 'tis possible, I might tell him several Members of the Company were desirous to have me continue in their Service; and that as I had faithfully discharged the Trust they had reposed in me for twenty Years together, they expressed such Dissatisfaction of my quitting their Employment, that I should not doubt of obtaining of them very advantageous Terms, in case I should be inclined to treat with them about returning to their Service.

Mr. D——.

He also in the bearing of his Officers at Churchill told the Governor and Officers of the Company there that he would be a better Friend to the Company than they expected; for he would be able to make the Voyage without

might have accrued

about any Man on board, being the Wiser, whether  
it was a Passage or not.

or Bribes were offer'd  
ing the Discovery, and  
open to be suspected.

ton.

is Paragraph with all the  
wards or Bribes were  
s perfecting the Dis-  
Does he not make it  
bribes, if any were of-  
to be so plain that they  
Lieutenant, Surgeon,  
any Bribes; and will  
e Assertion, from one  
y Enemy, a sufficient

's large Profession  
once induc'd me to  
, and unbosom my self  
e, I might tell him  
pany were desirous to  
Service; and that as I  
Trust they had repos'd  
gether, they express'd  
ing their Employment  
obtaining of them very  
I should be inclin'd to  
ing to their Service.

is Officers at Churchill  
s of the Company there  
end to the Company that  
able to make the Voyage  
without

Capt. Middleton.

do remember, that being once with the Govern-  
and some Officers of the Company, they jeer-  
ingly said, we were to be regarded as a kind of En-  
emies; and that I answered, Perhaps they might  
find me a better Friend than they imagined, or to  
purpose; meaning thereby, not only the Power  
instructions gave me to protect their Trade, and  
which they understood well enough; but some-  
else also, which they could not so easily com-  
prehend. To explain myself to your Lordships,  
agents of a certain Gentleman had, without my  
knowledge or Consent, shipped on board the *Dis-*  
as many Goods, to be disposed of to the *In-*  
as would have gained them many hundreds  
pounds. This I discovered at the *Orkneys*; and  
resolved, as I was in Duty bound, not to suffer  
body on board to trade with the least part of  
the Words I am charged with in the latter Part  
of my Accusation were spoken to my own People  
on board, as a Reproach to their Ignorance and Stu-  
pidity, and their Aversion to be instructed; and  
I solemnly declare it, not in the hearing of  
any that belonged to the Company, to the ut-  
most of my Remembrance. Besides the Lieute-  
nant and the two Masters, there was not a Person in  
the Ship skilled enough in Sea-Affairs, to have  
guess'd in what Part of the World he  
was without being told.

There now are two Expressions of mine, utter'd  
at different Times, in different Places, to different  
Persons, and to quite different Purposes, most in-  
conveniently coupled together by the single Particle *for*,  
which is wrought up into one terrible Charge against

H

I



I humbly submit it to your Lordships Candour whether, if I had really thought fit to have given the Governor such kind of Assurances, as this Gentleman pretends, it is likely I should have been infatuated to such a degree as to do it in so publick Manner; and before such Witnesses?

Mr. D——.

—— and in consequence of this Declaration to care, that nothing should be mentioned in the Log-book but what he saw and directed; and said, He would break up all their Boxes who kept Journals, and take their Books and Papers from them ——

Capt. Middleton.

As there was no such Declaration there could be no Consequence. The Lieutenant disowns any such Orders mine about Entries, and I am afraid the Log-book will be thought rather to abound than to be defective in Particulars. The Charge of taking away Journals, Papers, &c. is absolutely false. See Lieutenant's and Master's Answer to Qu. 20. and the Affidavits.

Mr. D——.

He also, when he was in Wager River, discouraged and discouraged any who said it was a Strait and not a River, and that there was a Likelihood there being a Passage that Way ——

Capt. Middleton.

I never discountenanced, but, on the contrary encouraged every one to speak and report according to his Judgment with Freedom; unless giving Reasons against a Passage as I have laid down before pag. 2. are to be look'd upon as discouraging; and further I refer to the Lieutenant's Answer to Qu



to the several Affidavits of *Towns*, (App. XXII.) *Sobriek*, (App. XXIII.) *Grant*, (App. XXIV.) *Cooper*; (App. XXV.)

*Mr. D*——.

—— and during the whole Voyage kept all on board as much in the Dark as he could. If then the Captain had not an Inclination to suppress the Discovery, or to conceal it so far, as to make it answer his Purposes with the Company, in order to procure a Reward for them for concealing it; they fearing upon a Discovery of the Passage's being made, that their Right to the Monopoly they at present enjoy might be enquired into, and their Trade laid open; how came he to discourage any on board from making any Enquiry about the Discovery?—

*Capt. Middleton*.

It has ever been my Endeavours (and was so this Voyage especially) to instruct such as I have found ignorant, and to improve such as had already made some Proficiency, whether in the Navigating Part, taking Observations of all kinds, or computing from them when made. For the Truth of this, I appeal to all the Judges of such Matters who have known me for above these twenty Years together; and I have the Satisfaction to find it acknowledged by your Lordships by the Master, in his Answer to the 5, and 20; I further refer to the several Affidavits of *Towns*, (App. XXII.) *Von Sobriek*, (App. XXIII.) *Grant*, (App. XXIV.) and *Cooper*, (App. XXV.) and as for what he surmises in relation to the Company, I shall give a full Answer to that and by.

*Mr. D*——.

—— and when they apprehended from the Number of Whales at the west End of Wager River,——

Capt. Middleton.

A meer Fiction. Before, he says, at twenty Leagues from the Entrance it was full of Whales To which I answered, That none were seen above *Deer Sound*, which is but fifteen Leagues within the River. Now he has brought them quite up to the west End, thirty or forty Leagues, though we never saw one there, nor does any Report or Journal make the least Mention of any such thing.

Mr. D——

—— *from the Depth of the Water, Breadth of the Strait, Height of the Coast, and Rapidity of the Stream, that there was a Prospect of a Passage.*

Capt. Middleton.

Answered and confuted in Page 16 and 17.

Mr. D——

—— *How came he to say that they were double tongued Rascals,——*

Capt. Middleton.

I deny that I ever used any such Expression, and should be glad to know whence he had his Intention.

Mr. D——

—— *and that he would cane the Lieutenant, break the Master, and lash all others, for taking them to dispute it,——*

Capt. Middleton.

The Lieutenant in his Answers to Queries 5 and 20, disavows his Knowledge of any such Threatnings; so does the Master, and disbelieves them so in his Answer to Query 5; and the Men swear the same in all their Affidavits. The very

ors of this Forgery have thought proper to grant, their Answers to Query 5, that nobody heard any Thing of Threatening but themselves, and I desire to leave it to the Opinion of your Lordships, how far they deserve to be credited.

Mr. D——

— And when he, upon Account of their Clamour under a Necessity of sending up the Lieutenant and Master in a six oar'd Boat, to make further Observations of the Tides, and to know whether the Whales come into the River any other Way,——

Capt. Middleton.

I am not conscious that I acted in any respect, so as to give Occasion to Clamour, nor was I sensible of any. My whole Intention in sending the Boat on this last Time, was to try if there could be any Outlet into the *Welcome*, besides that whereby we entered. Many Years Experience of the sad and sudden Effects of Cold in this Country, persuaded me that this could be no unreasonable Step towards preserving his Majesty's Ships and Subjects committed to my Care, in case Winter should set in before we could be able to repass the Mouth of the River, at that Time much clogged with Ice; and that this was my principal Motive, which, I humbly presume, appear unquestionable to your Lordships, both from my Order of July 27th to the Lieutenant and Master (*App. IX.*) and from my Report of August 1. at their Return (*App. X.*)

Mr. D——

— Why did he limit them to go no further up than *himself had been before*, and to come back with the *fast Dispatch that the Nature of the Service would allow of* ——

Capt.

ton. .  
he says, at twenty  
was full of Whales  
none were seen above  
en Leagues within the  
them quite up to the  
agues, though we never  
ny Report or Journal  
such thing.

Water, Breadth of  
, and Rapidity of  
pect of a Passage.

Middleton.  
Page 16 and 17.

they were double tong

Middleton.  
y such Expression, a  
ence he had his Inten

the Lieutenant, bro  
others, for taking

Middleton.  
Answers to Queries 5  
ge of any such Threat  
and disbelieves them  
5; and the Men sw  
davits. The very

## Capt. Middleton.

They were not so limited as he alledges. It was a Blunder of my Clerk's to write, *as far as Deer Sound* in the Order ; and I not only told him so at the going off of the Boat ; but likewise verbally gave the Lieutenant leave, as himself and the Master both acknowledge in their Answer to Query 3. to proceed up as far as he could conveniently, without retarding the Ships from sailing out of the River, because I intended to sail in a few Days : For I own, that for the Reasons mentioned just now, I was much more intent on getting out of the River, than on further prosecuting the Discovery of a Passage within it ; even tho' I had entertained the strongest Presumption that there might be one ; whereas I had very cogent Inducements to think there was none ; and besides, to have sought one against an Ebb, would have been going contrary to my Instructions.

## Mr. D—

— And when they exceeded his Orders by about 10 Leagues, and then reported, that from thence they saw a large Collection of Waters North of them, with many Islands and high bluff Points, with broken Lands on the West Side, as well as on the East, and that they saw a great many black Whales, and did believe there was another Way into the Sea, besides that the Ship came in at, why did he only, from a Bottle of Water being brackish (which is also disputed) which was taken up near an Inlet where they apprehended there was a fresh Stream, sail directly out of the River, and quit the Discovery on the 4th of August, the only Month in which the Discovery could be best attempted, —

Capt. Middleton.

Here he would insinuate again, that Whales were  
 en 15 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, whereas the  
 report sets forth, that it was at *Deer Sound* on  
 their Return, and no where else that they saw them  
 that River. The Passage into the Sea, if any,  
 the same Report says they did believe was some-  
 where on the East Side the River, and not North-  
 ward or Westward, as he seems here to pretend :  
 no where appears that a Bottle of Water was  
 taken up near a fresh Inlet ; the Master, in his An-  
 swer to Query 1, says, that the Water was positive-  
 ly fresher and fresher as they went higher, and the  
 Affidavits of *Towns* (*App. XXII.*), *Von Sobriek*  
 (*App. XXIII.*), and *Grant* (*App. XXIV.*), all set  
 forth expressly, that from 4 Leagues above *Deer*  
*Sound*, to the utmost Height the Boat went, the  
 Water, even in the Mid-channel of the River, was  
 but barely brackish, and that the Men all drank of  
 it alongside, instead of Beer. The rest is answered  
 ready in Pages 18 and 28.

Mr. D——

—— and leave these Openings, which were then  
 free from Ice, which led towards the South-west, West,  
 and North-west undiscovered ?——

Capt. Middleton.

If these Openings were left undiscovered, how  
 could he to apprehend there were any such ? But  
 not to insist on his *Hibernicisms*, or other Impro-  
 prieties of Language, the Lieutenant says in his  
 Report of July 25, that he saw several Openings or  
 Passages on the South Side of the River, but that he  
 could not get near them for Ice. I have said before,  
 Page 21. that we had made several Attempts to  
 go on the South-west Side, but never could suc-  
 ceed

Capt.

ceed for Ice, till the Day before we left the River, when I landed there myself. I will add here, that when I was myself up with the Boat 4 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, I also attempted to land on the Side, but could get no further than half Way over

Mr. D—

— and pretend to look for the Passage North-eastward, and afterwards South-eastwards, by his imaginary frozen Strait.

Capt. Middleton.

My Instructions ordered me always to direct my Course so as to meet the Tide Flood. I did so here till I could do it no farther, finding my self inclosed in Ice, and embayed by Land. I have proved the Reality of the *Frozen Strait* in Pages 2 and 35.

Mr. D—

— How came he afterwards, when it was resolved in Council to try the West-side of the *Welcome* from *Cape Dobbs* to *Brook Cobham*, where he had met with a rapid Tide going Northward, and where *Fox Norton*, and *Scroggs* had said there were broad Lands and Inlets, where great Numbers of Whales had been seen, and *Norton* had assured him that from *Mountain* he saw an open Sea leading to the Southward of the West from *Whalebone Point*: I say, how came he in good Weather, and with easterly Winds to keep 5 or 6 Leagues to the Eastward of the Head-lands, and to pass from *Cape Dobbs* to *Cape Fullerton* in the Night, and afterwards slightly to come along the Bay to Southward of *Cape Fullerton*, without any Stop but by lying by in the Night, altho' he saw many Whales as he passed along, never once trying the Height or Direction of the Tide, or sending in Boats to look for any Inlet.—

## Capt. Middleton.

that we pass'd from Cape *Dobbs* to Cape *Fuller-*  
 the Afternoon before Sunset, will appear from  
 our Journals, and more particularly from  
 our Logg Books. To his Repetitions of  
*Fox's*, *Norton's*, and *Scroggs's* Authorities,  
 I would answer, by asking if he thinks we have not  
 conformed their 4 and 5 Fathom Tides by our three  
 Weeks Observations upon the Tides in *Wager* Ri-  
 ver. And if he cares not to credit me in this Mat-  
 ter, let him consult his Friend the Lieutenant's  
 Journal. *Scroggs*, for his Part, asserted at his Re-  
 turn, that there was no going much further than  
 the *Whalebone* Point, which was his *ne ultra*, for a  
 Rocks; tho' we went 60 Leagues beyond it;  
 and 5 Fathom Ebb, we found near the same Place,  
 no more than 16 or 18 Feet. What *Nor-*  
 ton, or, if I rightly remember, his Carpenter,  
 advised about seeing from a high Land within  
 the *Whalebone* Point, an open Sea that stretched away  
 Southward of the West, was, in all Probability,  
 the River *Wager*, or else some such large fresh  
 Lakes, as myself, the Lieutenant, and those  
 that were with us, saw from the Mountains every  
 where about *Deer Sound*, and likewise on the South  
 Shore of *Wager* River, the Day I was there, and  
 about Cape *Frigid*, and in short, wherever we land-  
 ed these northern Parts. That it could be no  
 stretching far Westward, has been already  
 appear from the Account given of the same  
*Norton's* and the *Indian's* Land Voyage, Page 41.  
 West has been answered, Page 21, and I further  
 to our Journals, to the Master's Answer: to  
 Page 13. and to the several Affidavits of *Towns*  
 (App. XXII.), *Von Sobriek* (App. XXIII.), and  
 (App. XXIV.)



Mr. D——.

—— notwithstanding the Presumption that the Whales came only from the Westward;——

Capt. Middleton.

—— Answered and contradicted before in Pag. 1 and disbelieved by the Lieutenant at Append. X. Master in their Report of August 1.

Mr. D——.

—— From the Accounts of Fox, Norton, and Scroggs of its being a broken Land with Inlets.—

Capt. Middleton.

—— The Invalidity of their Authorities were shewn just now.—

Mr. D——.

—— and the Indians who had informed them, there was a fine Copper Mine on an Arm of the thereabouts, where they could bring a Vessel to lay Side to the Place.—

Capt. Middleton.

—— Answered Page 41, 42.

Mr. D——.

—— How could he neglect this without some Reason after a Consultation held and agreed to for to search that Coast; the Tides there, by Scroggs, and Fox's Accounts, being very rapid, and high Tides rising from 4 to 5 Fathoms by their Accounts, and yet these Coasts and these Tides never attempted to be known by him, and thus that whole Coast, where the chiefest Presumption was of a Passage, from all former Accounts, as at the present, was never searched, but only searched along en passant, with this only Remark in the Journal

"that he saw the Land from Cape Hope to Brook  
Cobham, and knew it to be a Main-land," tho' by his  
Journal he pass'd great Part in the Night, and was  
nearest 5 or 6 Leagues from the Head-land to the  
Eastward; and at the same time owns, there were deep  
Bays, and many Islands in those Bays.

Capt. Middleton.

Repetitions again repeated, tho' answered again  
again; so often, indeed, that I am really a-  
shamed to trouble your Lordships any more, with  
References to the Answers.

Mr. D—

Why did not the Captain in sailing Northward from  
Churchill, when he came up with the Head-land in  
63° 20', off which he had deep Water and strong  
Tides, and very easy Weather, as he had the whole Voy-  
age why did he not then, I say, send the Boat ashore to  
measure the Height as also the Direction of the Tide, and  
enquire whether there were any Openings or Inlets in the  
Land? For since upon his getting to 63° 55', he saw  
Ice on Shore to Northward, he could lose no Time  
in making a thorough Search there, until the Ice was  
diminished in the Welcome, that Bay being the princi-  
pal Place where Fox had discovered so many Whales,  
and found such high Tides as from 18 to 24 Foot.—

Capt. Middleton.

Because, as I have said before in Page 40th, my  
Instructions directed me, after I came to Carey's  
Nest, to steer Northwesterly, so as to fall in  
with the North-west Land, at Sir Thomas Roe's  
Bay, or ne ultra, near the Latitude of 65 De-  
grees North. This Mr. D— knew full well, at  
the time when he never had a single Thought that  
the Coast he here speaks so much of, was worth ex-  
amining; otherwise surely he would have taken Care

Assumption that the Whales

Middleton.  
Cited before in Pag. 1  
by the Lieutenant at  
Report of August 1.

Fox, Norton, and Scroggs  
with Inlets.—

Middleton.  
Authorities were the

had informed them,  
one on an Arm of the  
and bring a Vessel to lay

Middleton.  
42.

this without some De-  
and agreed to for to see  
by Scroggs, and Fox  
and high Tides rising  
counts, and yet these Ca-  
puted to be known by  
where the chiefest Presum-  
all former Accounts, as  
searched, but only se-  
only Remark in the J

that my Instructions should not have been defective in this Point. He is resolved, I find, to ring Changes on *Fox, Tides, and Whales* in my Ears, without Mercy. Really, my Lords, I can say no more about them than I have said already.

Mr. D——

—— *It was also already observed, that he mistook the Tide of Flood there for the Ebb on Tuesday the 6th of July, at Full Moon; so that he was not so very accurate in observing the Tides as he ought to have been.*——

Capt. Middleton.

This has been fully answered, and undeniably confuted in Page 32.

Mr. D——

—— *And a thorough Discovery there at that Time had been safer, as well as more satisfactory, than putting into the Ice to the Northward, until it was more dissolved.*

Capt. Middleton.

But would it have been consistent with my own Safety to have departed from my Instructions, in quest of a Passage on that Coast, where also it had been given over for so many Years, and after so many Attempts?

Mr. D——

*Why did he, when the Tide carried him with such Rapidity into the River Wager, get out of the Way of the Tide, to the North-east, instead of the South-west, which was the Side he ought to have endeavoured to discover, and not the North-east Side, unless he apprehended he might discover too much, by going higher up with the Tide; for in case he found Inlets on the South-*

*South-west Side, he could not then conceal the Passage from his Officers and Crew.—*

*Capt. Middleton.*

When we first entered *Wager* River, and indeed during the whole three Weeks we were there, as I have said before, we found it impracticable to come near the South-west Shore, except once with the Boat; and were glad at any Rate to get the Ships into some safe Roadstead, as may be seen in our Journals, 13th 14th and 15th of *July*. The *Pink* was in the most imminent Danger, being driven up and down by three successive Tides, and several Times carried so close upon Islands, that the Men might have jump'd on Shore, as the Master's and Mate's Journals express more particularly: Nor was the *Furnace's* Condition much better; for all Hands were forced to be employed in steering her, and sending off the Ice two or three Tides together, whilst she lay at Anchor.

*Mr. D—*

*— Why did he prevent the Lieutenant's taking along with him from Churchill, one of the Factory's Men, who perfectly understood the Northern Indian Language, who would have been of great Use upon the Discovery, when the Lieutenant told him, he would take all the Blame, in case any Complaint was made of it, since it was for the Good of the Service.*

*Capt. Middleton.*

I find the Master has given a very pertinent Answer to this, in his Answer to Query 16. For my own Part, I say, that near two Months before the Northern Indians came down, I did, in the Lieutenant's Hearing, express a Desire of obtaining this Person of the Company, in case none should come that Year, for they sometimes miss. But they ar-  
riving

riving at their usual Time, I could only importune the Governor to prevail on two of them, who best knew the Country, and could speak the Language of several Nations, to go along with us; together with a third *Indian* of their own, who could converse with those others very intelligibly, having travelled with them two Winters, and understood *English* very well besides. To procure this Favour, I found it requisite to make the Governor very considerable Presents, who exacted also a strict Promise from me, that I would return the two Northern *Indians* ashore, somewhere about *Whale Cove* or *Brook Cobham*, laden with Goods, and furnish'd with Arms for their Defence. As for the other *Indian*, whom I had known from a Boy, I had leave both from the Governor and his Parents to bring him home to *England*, if I thought fit; which I did, and he soon after died of the Small-pox. Now, had I permitted the Lieutenant to have impressed that other Man, or had otherwise attempted to take him away by Force,

Lords Commis-  
sioners Order of  
May 29. Ap. II.

I should have acted contrary to my Instructions, which required me expressly, not to give any Disturbance to the Ships or Sloops of the *Hudson's Bay Company*; for that Man was Linguist to one of their Sloops for the Northern Trade: Besides, I could not have promised myself any Service from one thus compulsively dragged away against his Inclination.

Mr. D——

Query, Whether the Northern Indians on board him did not point out to go into the Western Shore, between 62° and 64° Degrees, before he was inclosed in the Ice, which was a strong Presumption that there was an Inlet thereabouts?——

Capt.

Capt. Middleton.

I absolutely deny the Truth of what is insinuated in this Query.

Mr. D—

*Why did he, when the Indians who were beginning to understand and speak the English Language, were desirous of coming to England, put them ashore against their Inclinations, in a very indifferent Boat, on an Island some Leagues from the Main, at a great Distance from their Country, unless to prevent their giving an Account of what they knew in relation to that Country and Strait, in case they came to speak the English Tongue?*

Capt. Middleton.

They expressed no Desire of seeing England that I know of; and if they had, what would have excused me to the Governor, or to myself, for bringing them hither; when, as I had observed just now, I had so solemnly engaged to land them somewhere about *Whale-Cove*, or *Brook Cobham*. The rest is contradicted by the Master's Answer to Query 18, and by the several Affidavits of *Towns*, (App. XXII.) *Grant*, (App. XXIV.) and *Cooper*, (App. XXV.)

Mr. D—

*Why did he, when employed by the Government in so useful a Discovery, after having been offered 5000 l. from the Company to quit the King's Service, or to search for the Passage in Davis's Straits, or any other Place, where it was unlikely to find it, enter into an Agreement, or at least accept of an Offer made by Sir Bibye Lake their Governor, of giving him two Years Salary, not to do any thing to interfere with their Trade, and upon this gave an Order, under severe Penalties, that none of his Crew should have the least Intercourse*

or

y importune  
n, who best  
e Language  
us; together  
could con-  
having tra-  
erstood En-  
is Favour, I  
r very confi-  
strict Promise  
Northern In-  
ove or Brook  
d with Arms  
lian, whom I  
from the Go-  
ne to England,  
he soon after  
permitted the  
ther Man, or  
way by Force,  
ntrary to my  
uired me ex-  
y Disturbance  
f the Hudson's  
nguist to one  
e: Besides, I  
Service from  
y against his

ians on board  
Western Shore,  
he was inclosed  
tion that there

Capt.



*or Trade with the Natives ; and whether upon doing this, and concealing the Passage, he might not have had greater Expectation from the Company ; and whether, upon his Return, his sending Letters immediately to the Company, and desiring that none of his People should communicate any thing about the Voyage or Discovery for some time, and even to conceal all material Articles from the Gentleman who projected the Voyage, until he forced it out of him from Observations from his Journal, after keeping it from him for three Months, and by repeated Letters, assuring him, the whole was impracticable, whether this, I say, did not look like a Design to make his own Terms with the Company, before he would publish his Journal ; for if all he had in view was only the two Years Salary, not to damnify their Trade, and this had only a Reference to his Crews not trading with the Natives, the revealing what he knew concerning the Passage and Voyage, would have been of no Detriment to him with the Company.*

*Capt. Middleton.*

This last Paragraph contains a Repetition, after his usual manner, of sundry Matters which he had dwelt long enough upon before ; particularly Complaints of my being offered 5000 *l.* from the Company to quit the King's Service, or at least of accepting two Years Salary, not to do any thing to interfere with their Trade ; all which I have fully answered before, and I hope to your Lordships Satisfaction. But now the Snake in the Grass begins to shew himself ; for he sums up all with this grand Complaint, that *Upon this I gave an Order, under severe Penalties, that none of my Crew should have the least Intercourse, or trade with the Natives.* My Lords, I have already said, I was bound in Duty and Gratitude to do this, whether the Company rewarded me or not. Permit me here, my Lords, to recriminate in my Turn, and observe that by this

mea  
as h  
on l  
I all  
Rig  
vate  
suad  
so o  
the  
Com  
Ter  
from  
newl  
Splee  
that  
tages  
heart  
Whe  
stigm  
Whe  
unble  
Publ  
ment  
but t  
Expe

A Sa

T  
the V  
twixt  
Wage

means the Gentleman who projected the Voyage, as he affects to stile himself, as well as his Agents on board, met with no small Disappointment. Had I allow'd them Liberty to infringe the Company's Rights, and make such Depredations for their private Benefit, as they seem'd to intend, I am persuaded I should have heard none of these Complaints so often reiterated; nothing of my Friendship to the Company; of Rewards and Bribes from the Company; of endeavouring to make my own Terms with the Company; of great Expectations from the Company; all which are Allegations newly trump'd up, and manifestly the Effects of Spleen and Disappointment. Does not this shew, that the Projector of the Voyage had the Advantages of a clandestine Trade as much or more at heart, than the publick Utility of a Discovery? Whence otherwise should arise his Endeavours to stigmatize the Company, and dissolve their Charter? Whence his unwearied Application to prejudice my unblemish'd Character with your Lordships, or the Publick? Whence his Project of a new Settlement, and a further Prosecution of the Discovery, but to intrust it with such as should not baulk his Expectation in other Matters?

---

*A Summary State of Mr. D——'s Objections,  
and Captain Middleton's Answers.*

**T**HE only Places where Mr. D—— presumes there may be a Passage from *Hudson's-Bay* to the Western Ocean of *America*, are on the Coast betwixt *Brook Cobham*, in Latitude 63°, or through *Wager River*, by him supposed to be a Strait.

K

From

From Brook *Cobbam* to *Whalebone-Point* has been so frequently and so carefully coasted and searched, that all hopes of meeting with any Inlet, that may lead to a Passage any where throughout all that Extent, has been given up for at least an hundred Years past. However, Capt. *Middleton*, in his Return back from the *Frozen Strait* to Brook *Cobbam*, very carefully re-examined all this Shore, keeping as close into it as the Islands and Rocks would permit him with safety; and saw all the main Land, and Bottoms of the Bays, as is explain'd in the Log-Book, which shews the Coast and Distance sailed every Hour, in halling off or on to deepen or shoalden the Water, which his Journal expresses less particularly, especially from *Whalebone-Point* to Brook *Cobbam*, (for the rest of that Course northward he had travers'd outward-bound.) He had very little hazy Weather, except in the Night, and then he lay by till Day-light, and halled in as near the Shore as he durst; so that it was impossible for him to miss any Inlets, where there could be any hopes of a Passage. Off *Cape Fullerton*, he met with Rocks and broken Ground five Leagues distant, which forced him to hall further off to deepen his Water, and lay to for moderate clear Weather between the Shores. But when it clear'd up, he stood in N. and N. b. W. into 40 odd Fathoms: If he came within that Depth, he fell into broken Ground, sudden Shoaldings, Riplings and Overfalls. Between Latitude  $64^{\circ}$  and  $63^{\circ}$ , he had better Soundings, and came nearer the Land, tho' at Night he was obliged to keep a League or two further out, and drive, standing in shore again by Day. He was never more than four or five Leagues from Shore but once, and that was towards Morning in Expectation of Day-light. In most other Places, he was not above two or three Leagues from Land, and in nine Fathom Water off the

He  
Sid  
pea  
far  
fenc  
mo  
wer  
Boa  
suff  
Sail  
neg  
and  
he c  
Ship  
Hea  
Edd  
T  
of t  
the  
stan  
in hi  
fidav  
tho'  
denc  
ledg  
N  
had  
struc  
abou  
all a  
ment  
muc  
the v  
Han  
prud  
he c  
held  
Ref

Head Land in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ . He observ'd all the north Side of the *Welcome* to be high Land, and it appeared very near at four or five Leagues distance, as far as *Brook Cobbam*. The Reason why he did not send his Boat ashore to try the Tides, was because most of his Men had lost the Use of their Limbs, or were otherwise so sick, that if he had mann'd the Boat, the remaining Hands would have been insufficient to have work'd the Ship, and handed the Sails. However, the Tides were so far from being neglected by him, that he tried them frequently and almost every Hour; as also the Currents, which he could do as well on board, or in a Boat near the Ship, in the Channel, and much better than within Head Lands, or near Islands, which by forming Eddies produce an Irregularity in them.

This Account of Capt. *Middleton's* Examination of the aforesaid Coast, does not only appear from the Log-book to be true, but is further circumstantially confirm'd as to Particulars by the Master, in his Answer to Queries 12 and 13, and by the Affidavits of *T. Towns*, *U. von Sobrick*, and *G. Grant*, tho' it be contradicted by Mr. *D*—'s three Evidences; one of which, *viz.* the Lieutenant, acknowledges it all in his Journal.

Now it is just to remark, that tho' Mr. *D*— had himself the drawing up of Capt. *Middleton's* Instructions, yet they do not mention a single Word about looking for a Passage, or examining the Tides all along this Coast. Is it not then a strong Argument, that Capt. *Middleton* had the Discovery very much at heart, that, at a time, when, on account of the very sick and helpless Condition of most of the Hands, it had otherwise been both desirable and prudent for him to have made homewards as fast as he could, he should, as appears from the Council held the eighth Day of *August*, himself propose a Research of this Coast for a Passage which had been

so often attempted in vain by others, and perform it so carefully too as is set forth above, when he was not otherwise in point of Duty held to it at all.

This Point being discuss'd, it remains now only to examine, whether a Passage may be reasonably presum'd upon through *Wager River*, or not ?

*Mr. D———'s Reasons that Wager River is a Strait, and no fresh water River.*

Reason 1.

*From its Increase and Depth in advancing from its Entrance.*

*Answered.*

This is frequent in fresh Water Rivers, as all those, especially, know, who are acquainted with the *Swedish* and *Norwegian* Coasts, where the fresh Rivers, or Ferries, as they call them, are often not above ten or twelve Fathoms at the Entrance, and yet they extend to vast Breadths, and discover no Ground even with Lines of two or three hundred Fathoms.

Reason 2.

*From the Height of the neighbouring Lands——*

*Answered.*

The Lands about the aforesaid Ferries are full as high as any Capt. *Middleton* saw near *Wager River*.

Reason 3.

*From the Want of Trees and Shrubs on any Lands near it, tho' such are always found in the same or more northerly Latitudes upon fresh Water Rivers.*

*Answered.*

All those who have travelled this Country between Latitude  $58^{\circ}$  and  $66^{\circ} 30'$  by Land, agree, that higher than  $61^{\circ}$  they saw neither Tree nor Shrub, but

but only Mofs; even among fresh Rivers and Lakes.

## Reason 4.

*From its being full of black Whales, Seals, and Sea-horses, at twenty Leagues above the Entrance, with Numbers of Whales at the west End, where none were seen below Deer Sound, or without the Mouth of the River, or in any Parts of Hudson's Straits or Bay, except about Brook Cobham, being an Indication that they all came out of the Sea from the westward.*

*Answered.*

It does not appear from any Journals, Reports, or Answers, that one Whale was seen higher than *Deer Sound*, which is but fifteen Leagues up; whereas the West-end is above thirty Leagues; or that one Sea-horse or Seal was seen in any Part of the River. But that several were seen just without the Mouth of the River in the *Welcome*, is attested by the Log-Book, and by the Affidavits of *Towns*, *Von Sobriek*, and *Grant*. And Capt. *Middleton* has traded fresh Whalebone in all Parts of the Bay and Straits, where the *Eskimaux* frequent; which could not be, if the Whales, from whence they get it, were not killed there; because, in ten or twelve Days after they are dead, the Bone all drops from their Mouths; all which amounts together to almost a Demonstration, that the Whales, both in the Bay, and *Wager River*, come from the North-east, which is also somewhat confirmed from the great Number of *Indian* Storehouses of Oil, Finn, and Blubber, not above eight Leagues up, on the north-east Coast of the River; whereas their proper Habitations are on the Main, on t'other Side the River. Moreover, if these Whales came out of any Sea from the Westward, they would have been seen in plenty the higher they had gone up, which was not so. However, Conclusions drawn from  
Whales



Whales being seen in any Place, are at the best but very precarious.

Reason 5.

*From broken Lands north-westwards, and a great Collection of Waters seen at a distance, full of Islands, on the south-west Side.*

*Answer'd.*

It is most likely, that these watery Spaces seen at a distance, are the same sort of Lakes of melted Snow from the Mountains, as were every were seen from the Eminencies they ascended in that Country to overspread the Vallies. But be that as it will, there was no coming near them for the Rapidity of the Water-falls, that hindered the Boat from going higher up than she did, and the immense Quantities of Ice along the southwest Shore.

*Captain MIDDLETON's REASONS why Wager River has no Communication with the Sea westward.*

Reason 1.

Because the Tide of Flood comes in at its Mouth from the Eastward.

Reason 2.

Because it flowed eighteen Feet at the Entrance ; but thirteen at *Deer Sound* ; and the highest the Boat could go for Water-falls, no more than five or six Feet.

Reason 3.

Because the Water was found to be so fish in the Mid-channel above *Deer Sound*, that the Men freely drank it along-side the Boat instead of Beer ; and the higher they went they found it the fresher.

Reason 4.

Because no Whales were seen there but at the Entrance of the River, and at *Deer Sound*, this being  
an

an Argument that they came not from any Sea to the Westward; but entered by some Inlet from the north-east.

*Reason 5.*

Because Travellers, which have gone from *Cchurch-ill* by Land, as high as the arctic Circle, affirm, that they met with neither salt Water River, nor Sea, in any Part of their Journey.

OBJECTIONS *and* QUERIES upon Points of  
*Conduct Answered.*

## Objection 1.

**A** Large Opening on the south-west Side of *Wager River*, which the Lieutenant set with his Compass from a Place near *Deer Sound*, was never look'd into.

*Answer.*

The Lieutenant's unintelligible Paper about this Affair, will be found in the *Appendix* (XXX.) 'Tis hard to conceive how on the Bearings he mentions, any Object should be seen from his Station but on the east Shore, the same on which he stood, the River lying nearly N. and S. by Compass. Mr. *D*—— says, it was opposite the Place where most of the Whales were seen, which therefore should be over-against *Deer Sound*; but the Captain could distinguish nothing thereabouts, which in the least answered the Description. He many times attempted to land on the south-west Shore, but never could for Ice, except once; and then he perceived nothing but high mountainous Land, with large Lakes of melted Snow in the Vallies.

Objection

Objection 2.

*The Discovery was quitted in the Beginning of August, when all the Ice was dissolved in Wager River, that Month being the best Month in the Year to perfect the Discovery.*

*Answer.*

The Discovery was not quitted before the 15th of Aug. when they left Brook Cobham. If C. Middleton had stayed longer, he could not reasonably have expected to repass the Straits with his poor disabled Crew. A Ship not many Years ago was frozen up near Mansfield in the Middle of September, and her Crew almost perish'd with cold. The Straits are usually pass'd the latter End of August, or Beginning of September, and even then the Sails and Rigging are so hard frozen, that it costs them some Days to set any part of them. No Ship of the Company's must attempt to return after the tenth of September; and till a little above twenty Years ago a Voyage was seldom made without Wintering.

Objection 3.

*The Opening among the Islands to the north-westward beyond the Place the Lieutenant went to in Wager River, was not inquired into, although the Lieutenant and Master, under their Hands, reported there was another Way into the Sea than the Way the Ships entered, by which the Whales came there.*

*Answer.*

The Lieutenant and Master, in their Report, say, that they believe there is another Way into the Sea besides that which the Ships came in at, somewhere on the east Side (not on the N. W. Side) and that they imagine the Whales come through this Passage. Indeed, they were sent up to look for such a Passage, and to meet the Flood, for fear the River's Mouth

Mou  
in of  
the  
had  
Rive  
Wor

To  
Rive  
towa  
have

Th  
ashor  
again  
S. W.  
being  
from

The  
gid, t  
the Ca  
a half  
their  
they w  
to the  
northe  
the Ba  
Frozen  
tain ba

Wh  
Captai  
lars th

Mouth should not be clear of Ice before the setting in of Winter, and so all perish there. For after the Captain, for the Reasons before-mentioned, had given up all hopes of a Passage through this River, he would have parted with all he had in the World to have been out of it again.

Objection 4.

*To have avoided being carried back again into the River Wager, they ought to have kept their Course towards Cape Dobbs, that the Tide of Flood might have carried them to the Southward.*

*Answer.*

Then they could not have avoided being forc'd ashore among all the Ice that lay off *Cape Dobbs*, or again into the River; since they could lay only W. S. W. and S. W. on the other Tack, the Wind being S. and S. S. E. and the Flood coming strong from the E. and E. b. N.

Objection 5.

*The Carpenter and Gunner went ashore at Cape Frigid, to view the Land and supposed Frozen Strait; the Carpenter and Gunner went to a Hill a Mile and a half further than the Captain and Clerk, and upon their Return, as the Clerk affirms, they said the Hill they were upon was an Island, but the low Beachy Land, to the southward of them, was joined to the eastern and northern Land, which joined the west Land, and form'd the Bay above Cape Hope; and that there was no Frozen Strait to south-eastward of them, as the Captain has laid down in his Journal.*

*Answer.*

When the Carpenter and Gunner returned, the Captain strictly examined them, as to the Particulars they saw: Whether they were positively sure

L

that

that the low Beach joined to the Land they stood upon? They assur'd me it did, and that they were upon an Island cut off from the Beach, and that the *Frozen Strait*, of which they delivered the Captain a kind of Map or Plan the next Morning on board, was at least twelve Leagues wide from the East to the West Side, at the Mouth or narrowest Part. This Declaration of the Carpenter and Gunner is also attested by the Master in his Answer to Query 11. Besides, if there be no such Strait, whence should the strong Tide of four Miles an Hour come, which they met with there, and which the Lieutenant observed to force the Ships very rapidly to the North-east-ward.

#### Objection 6.

*He (the Captain) took Care that nothing should be mention'd in the Logg Book but what he saw and directed, and said he would break up all their Boxes that kept Journals, and take their Books and Papers from them. He also, when he was in Wager River, discountenanced and discouraged any who said it was a Strait and not a River, and that there was a Likelihood of there being a Passage that Way, and during the whole Voyage kept all on board him as much in the dark as he could; threatened to cane the Lieutenant, broomstick the Master, and lash all others, for taking upon them to dispute about a Passage.*

#### Answer.

The Captain is apprehensive, that the Logg Book will rather be thought to abound, than to be defective in Particulars. He never discountenanced, but, on the contrary, always encouraged every one in keeping Journals, and in speaking and reporting according to their Judgment, with the utmost Freedom; always instructing such as he found ignorant, and endeavouring to improve those who had made

made some Proficiency. The Lieutenant, in his Answer to Query 20, says, that he never heard of the Captain's threatening to take away Books and Papers, or giving Orders that nothing should be entered into the Logg Book which should give Hopes of a Passage; and denies that the Captain ever discountenanced or discouraged him: And in his Answer to Query 5, he says, that he knows nothing of the Threatening Captain *Middleton* is said to have made Use of. The Master, in his Answer to Query 5, says, he never heard of the least Threatening about the Discovery in any Part of the Voyage; but that the Captain always treated every Body too well; that he never hindered them from keeping what Account they would, being always ready to instruct any Officer that would ask him, and shewed several how to keep Journals that had never been at Sea before; that he has heard the Captain declare he would put up with all that could be endured, rather than the Discovery should be baulk'd. And in his Answer to Query 20, he says, the Captain seem'd on all Occasions heartily to encourage the Discovery, and was ever free in communicating, and in instructing every Officer and Man on board; that both the Lieutenant and himself had received great Benefit from his Instructions, and must acknowledge it; and that to represent the Captain in other Light, he is thoroughly satisfied, is doing him barbarous Injustice. The Affidavits of *T. Towns*, *U. Von Sobriek*, *G. Grant*, and *T. Cooper*, do all contradict what the Captain is here charged with, and abundantly confirm the Master's Account of his Behaviour. And it is observable, that the Inventers of the Romance about Threatening, confess that no body heard it but themselves.



## Objection 7.

*When the Captain, on Account of their Clamour, was under a Necessity of sending up the Lieutenant and Master in a six-oar'd Boat, to make further Observations of the Tides, and to know whether the Whales came into the River any other Way, why did he limit them to go no further up than he himself had been before, and to come back with the utmost Dispatch that the Nature of the Service would allow of?*

*Answer.*

The Captain is not conscious that he acted, in any Respect, so as to give Occasion to Clamour, nor was he sensible of any. His whole Intention in sending up the Boat this Time, was to try if there could be found any Outlet into the *Welcome*, besides that whereby they entered. Many Years Experience of the sudden and sad Effects of Cold in this Country, persuaded him that this was no unreasonable Step towards preserving his Majesty's Ships and Subjects committed to his Care, in case Winter should set in before they could be able to repass the Mouth of the River, at that time much clogg'd with Ice; and that this was his principal Motive, may appear both from his Order of *July 27*, to the Lieutenant and Master, and from their Report of *August 1*. at their Return. The Captain denies that these Officers were so limited as is pretended in this Query. It was a Blunder of his Clerk, to write, *as far as Deer Sound*, in the Order; and he not only told him so, at the going off of the Boat, but he likewise verbally gave the Lieutenant Leave, as himself and the Master both acknowledge, in their Answer to Query 3. to proceed up as far as he could conveniently, without retarding the Ships from sailing out of the River; he being, for the Reasons just now mentioned,

more

more intent on getting out of the River, than on further prosecuting the Discovery of a Passage within it, even tho' he had entertained the strongest Presumption that there might be one; whereas he had very cogent Reasons to think there was none: And besides, to have fought one against an Ebb, would have been going contrary to his Instructions.

Objection 8.

*Why did he, only from a Bottle of Water's being brackish (which is also disputed) which was taken up near an Inlet where they apprehended there was a fresh Stream, sail directly out of the River?*

*Answer.*

It no where appears, that a Bottle of Water was taken up near a fresh Inlet. The Master, in his Answer to Query 1, says, the Water was positively fresher and fresher as they went higher and higher; and the Affidavits of T. Towns, U. Von Sobriek, and G. Grant, all set forth expressly, that from 4 Leagues above Deer Sound, to the utmost Height the Boat went, the Water, even in the Mid-channel of the River, was but barely brackish, and that the Men all drank of it alongside instead of Beer.

Objection 9.

*Why did he, when the Tide carried him with such Rapidity into the River Wager, get out of the Way of the Tide to the North-east, instead of the South-west Side, which was the Side he ought to have endeavoured to discover, unless he apprehended he might discover too much, by going higher up with the Tide?*

*Answer.*

When they first entered Wager River, and indeed during the whole three Weeks they were there, they found it impracticable to come near the South-

South-west Shore, except once with the Boat ; and were glad at any Rate to get the Ships into some Roadstead, as may be seen in the Journals, July 13, 14 and 15.

Objection 10.

*Why did he prevent the Lieutenant's taking along with him from Churchill, one of the Factory's Men, who perfectly understood the Northern Indian Language, when the Lieutenant told him he would take all the Blame, in case any Complaint was made of it ?*

*Answer.*

The Captain expressed a Desire of obtaining this Person of the Company, in case the northern *Indians* should not come down that Year. But they arriving, he could only importune the Governor to prevail on two of them, who best knew the Country, and could speak the Language of several Nations, to go along with them, together with a third *Indian* of their own, who could converse with the other two very intelligibly. The Governor would not comply without a strict Promise of setting the two Northern *Indians* ashore at their Return, somewhere about *Whale Cove* or *Brook Cobham*, laden with Goods, and furnish'd with Arms and Ammunition ; which was done accordingly. Had the Captain permitted that other Man to have been impressed or forced away, he would have acted against his Instructions, which ordered him not to give any Disturbance to the Ships or Sloops of the Company : Now this Person was an Interpreter to one of their Sloops for the northern Trade.

Objection 11.

*Why did he, when the Indians who were beginning to understand and speak the English Language were desirous of coming to England, put them on shore against*

gain  
on a  
Dist  
givi  
Cour  
Eng

T  
ever  
had  
or t  
was  
to la  
Cobb  
says  
been  
kne  
suffi  
try,  
nitic  
well  
from  
whic  
davi  
muc  
wen  
Con

Obj

T  
fere  
to r  
to g

*gainst their Inclinations, in a very indifferent Boat, on an Island some Leagues from the Main, at a great Distance from their Country, unless to prevent their giving an Account of what they knew in relation to the Country and Strait, in case they came to speak the English Tongue ?*

*Answer.*

They express'd no Desire of seeing *England* that ever came to the Captain's Knowledge ; and if they had, what could have excus'd him to the Governor or to himself, for bringing them hither, when, as was just now observed, he had solemnly engag'd to land them somewhere about *Whale Cove* or *Brook Cobham* ? The Master in his Answer to Query 18, says, the Boat was a good one, and that they had been taught how to manage her ; that they said they knew their Way home very well ; that they were sufficiently fortified against all the Men in the Country, having Fire-arms, well stock'd with Ammunition, and more of every thing than they could well carry. And that they were but 250 Miles from their own Country or the Company's Factory, which is nothing for an *Indian* to travel. The Affidavits of *T. Towns*, *G. Grant*, and *T. Cooper*, speak much to the same Purpose, and say besides, they went away highly pleas'd, without any Manner of Compulsion.

*Objections and Surmizes about Bribery answered.*

*Objection 1.*

*The Captain, before he went the Voyage, was offer'd by some of the Directors of the Company 5000 l. to return to their Service, and not go the Voyage ; or to go search for the Passage in Davis's Straits, or in any*

any other Place but where he was directed; to which he answered, he might take their Money and be of no Service to them; for the Gentleman who had projected the Voyage, had it so much at Heart, that if he did not go, he would get somebody else to go; but before he had done with it, he hop'd to go in a Coach and six; to which one of them answered, he hop'd to see him at the Devil first.

*Answer.*

The Captain denies that any of the Directors, either by themselves or others, ever offered him him 5000 l. or one Shilling, upon any Account whatsoever; and granting such an Offer was made, the Objector acquits the Captain of any Crime, by the Answer he says he made (or rather, that he in this Place is so kind to make for the Captain) viz. that he might take the Money, and be of no Service to them, &c. What follows about his Hopes of riding in a Coach and Six, and some body's wishing him at the Devil, is such Trumpery that he can't think the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty believe it deserves a serious Answer, and he is surprized the Projector himself should think so. But granting the Offer were made, can the Refusal of so large a Bribe redound to the Captain's Disreputation?

Objection 2.

*They afterwards, by Sir Bibye Lake their Governor, promis'd him 2 Years Salary at 120 l. per annum, not to do any Thing to prejudice or obstruct their Trade, which he says was only upon Account of preventing his Crew's trading in the Bay.*

*Answer.*

The Refusal of 5000 l. which the Objector acknowledges, makes it altogether absurd to suppose, that he should accept of so paulty a Consideration

ration  
negle  
the v  
return  
tain g  
Prote  
and a  
Duty  
had l  
Privil  
with  
him  
migh

'Tis  
preven

Do  
he ref  
comes  
ther t  
him w  
a bare  
his E

He  
told th  
that b  
they ex  
withou  
there

Th  
with

ration as two Years Salary at 120 *l. per annum* to neglect his Duty in prosecuting the Discovery, when the very same Persons were offering him 5000 *l.* to return to a very beneficial Employment. The Captain grants that the Company recommended the Protection of their Trade to him: It was a natural and a reasonable Request; and he thought it the Duty of his Station to maintain them, as far as he had Power and Authority, in their just Rights and Privileges, and not to plunder them by trading with the Natives himself, or suffering others under him to trade with them, whatever Advantages might have accrued by it.

Objection 3.

*'Tis plain Rewards or Bribes were offered to him to prevent his perfecting the Discovery.*

*Answered.*

Does not the Objector make it also as plain that he refused Bribes, if any were offered? But how comes it to be so plain that they were offered? Neither the Lieutenant, Surgeon, nor Clerk charge him with any Bribes; and shall it be thought, that a bare Assertion from one that appears now to be his Enemy, is a sufficient Proof? He hopes not.

Objection 4.

*He also, in the Hearing of his Officers at Churchill, told the Governor and Officers of the Company there, that he would be a better Friend to the Company than they expected; for he would be able to make the Voyage without any Man on board being the wiser, whether there was a Passage or not.*

*Answer.*

The Captain does remember, that being once with the Governor and some Officers of the Com-  
M  
pany,



pany, they jeeringly said, he and his People were to be regarded as a kind of Enemies, and that he answered, perhaps they might find him a better Friend than they imagined, or to that Purpose ; meaning thereby, not only the Power his Instructions gave him to protect their Trade, and which they understood well enough ; but something else also, which they could not so readily comprehend. The Truth is, the Agents of a certain Gentleman had, without the Captain's Knowledge or Consent, shipp'd on board the *Discovery*, as many Goods to be disposed of among the *Indians*, as would have gained them many Hundreds of Pounds. This he discovered at the *Orkneys*, and was resolv'd, as he was in Duty bound, not to suffer any body on board to trade with the least Part of them. The Words he is charged with in the latter Part of this Objection were spoken to his own People on board, as a Reproach to their Ignorance and Stupidity, and their Aversion to being instructed ; and he solemnly declares, not in the Hearing of any one that belong'd to the Company, to the utmost of his Remembrance. Besides the Lieutenant and the two Masters, there was not a Man in either Ship, skill'd enough in Sea-affairs to have so much as guess'd in what Part of the World he was, without being told, Here now, are two Expressions of his uttered at different Times, in different Places, to different Persons, and to quite different Purposes, most ingeniously coupled together by the single Particle *for*, and so wrought up into one terrible Charge against him !

Objection 5.

*He gave an Order, under severe Penalties, that none of his Crew should have the least Intercourse or Trade with the Natives.*

*Answered.*

H  
to do  
not.  
Proje  
priva  
tility  
arise  
and c  
Appl  
Char  
Publi  
ment  
but t  
Expe

Insta  
w  
po  
an  
oth  
Co

T  
three  
and b  
was t  
equal

Al  
and t

*Answered.*

He has already said, that he was bound in Duty to do this, whether the Company rewarded him or not. But does not this Objection shew, that the Projector of the Voyage had the Advantage of a private Trade at Heart, more than the publick Utility of a Discovery? Whence otherwise should arise his Endeavours to stigmatize the Company, and dissolve their Charter? Whence his unwearied Application to prejudice the Captain's unblemish'd Character with the Lords of the Admiralty or the Publick? And whence his Project of a new Settlement, and a further Prosecution of the Discovery; but to intrust it with such as should not baulk his Expectation *in other Matters.*

---

*Instances of the Contradictions and Inconsistencies which occur in the Answers to the Queries propounded to the Lieutenant, Master, Surgeon, and Clerk, upon comparing them with one another, and with the Logg Books, Journals, Councils, Reports and Affidavits.*

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 1.*

**T**HE Water, I think, was salt; but as I would not depend on my own Judgment, I filled three Bottles with Water at three different Places, and brought them on board at my Return; and was told there was no Distinction, for they were all equally alike salt.

*Master's Answer to Query 1.*

Above *Deer Sound* the Water was much fresher, and the higher up the fresher still.

M 2

T. Town's

People were  
nd that he  
m a better  
at Purpose ;  
is Instructi-  
and which  
nothing else  
omprehend.  
Gentleman  
or Consent,  
ny Goods to  
would have  
unds. This  
esolved, as he  
ody on board  
The Words  
this Objecti-  
board, as a  
upidity, and  
d he solemnly  
one that be-  
st of his Re-  
and the two  
Ship, skill'd  
as guess'd in  
ut being told,  
his uttered at  
different Per-  
most ingenu-  
Particle for,  
harge against

Penalties, that  
Intercourse or

*Answered.*

*T. Town's Affidavit.*

The said Captains and the said four Men did all declare, that they had all tasted of the Water in the Mid-channel of the River, four Leagues above *Deer Sound*, and found it to be but barely brackish, and that the said four Men did freely drink of it for want of Beer.

*Ulrick Von Sobriek's Affidavit.*

Being up the River *Wager* three or four Leagues above *Deer Sound*, in the Boat with Capt. *Middleton*—He, this Deponent, and the rest of the Hands in the Boat, did drink the Water in the Mid-channel, and found it to be just brackish, so that it might very well be drank.

*Grance Grant's Affidavit.*

He, this Deponent, heard the said Capt. *Middleton* and all the said four Men assert, that they had tasted of the Water in the Mid-channel of *Wager River*, three or four Leagues above *Deer Sound*, and found it to be fresh, or but just brackish, and that the said Men, for want of Beer in the Boat, chose to drink it rather than suck the Ice, as they us'd to do elsewhere.

---

*Licutenant's Answer to Query 1.*

I steer'd W. N. W. by the Compass, along the West Shore.

*Master's Answer to Query 1.*

The Course we steer'd in the Boat after we came up with the Bluff Land was W. N. W. but the Course of both Shores by Compass from four Leagues below where the Ships lay, to the highest we went up, is North 15° West,

*Lieu=*

*Lieutenant and Master's Report, 27th July.*

When we were abreast with the high Bluff Land we steer'd W. N. W. keeping the Mid-channel.

---

*Clerk's Answer to Query 3.*

I very well know they were limited to go only to Deer Sound, or thereabouts, and ordered to come back with the utmost Dispatch.

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 3.*

The Captain's Orders in Writing to me were, that I should go to Deer Sound, or thereabouts; and to come back with the utmost Dispatch: But I desired he would give me my Liberty to act as I thought most conducive to the Discovery; and he verbally consented that I might run up the River or Strait as far as I could conveniently, without retarding the Ships from sailing.

*Master's Answer to Query 3.*

The Order, through the Hurry and Mistake of the Clerk, as the Captain told him at our putting off the Boat, was to make Observations in and near Deer Sound: But he gave the Lieutenant as I heard afterwards, verbal Orders to proceed as far as he thought proper.

*Captain's Order July 27.*

— And to report to me at your Return, which is to be as speedy as the Nature of the Service you are ordered upon will permit.

---

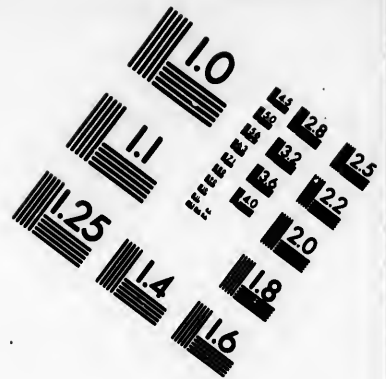
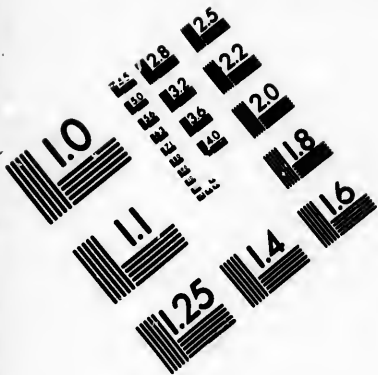
*Clerk's Answer to Query 5.*

He threatened to cane the Lieutenant, and Broomstick the Master, and whip all the rest.

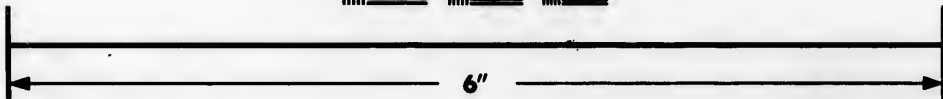
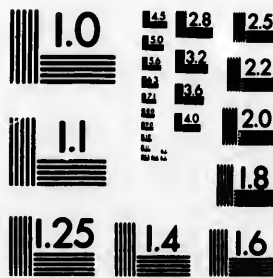
*Surgeon's*

*Lieu-*





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



15 28  
18 32  
22 36  
25 40  
28 44  
32 48  
36 52  
40 56  
44 60  
48 64  
52 68  
56 72  
60 76  
64 80  
68 84  
72 88  
76 92  
80 96  
84 100

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100

*Surgeon's Answer to Query 5.*

He said he would cane the Lieutenant, broomstick the Master, and whip all the rest that spoke any thing about the Passage.

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 5.*

I know nothing of the Threatning Capt. Middleton is said to have made use of.

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 20.*

I can't say the Captain discouraged or discountenanced me in making any Discovery.

*Master's Answer to Query 5.*

I never heard of the least Threatning during our being at Sea any Part of the Voyage, about the Discovery; but the Captain always treated every body too well, if I may be allowed the Expression.

*Affidavit of T. Towns.*

Capt. Middleton's Behaviour, as far as this Depo-  
nent ever saw or heard, was very kind and mild,  
and he never threatned Punishment to any one for  
offering his Mind with freedom about the Conduct  
used in the intended Discovery.

*Affidavit of Ulrich von Sobriek.*

Capt. Middleton's Treatment was very kind both  
to Officers and Men.

*Affidavit of Grance Grant.*

He never heard that Capt. Middleton threatned  
to punish any one for speaking his Mind about the  
Discovery; but, on the contrary, he was always  
courteous in his Behaviour to his Officers, and kind  
to all, sometimes when they did not deserve it.

*Affidavit*

*Affidavit of T. Cooper.*

He never heard, or was informed, of any high or harsh Words that passed between Capt. *Middleton* and any of his Officers; or that the said Captain did any wise threaten to punish any Man for speaking his Mind freely about the Discovery, or that he threatened to break open any ones Chest to come at Journals; but, on the contrary, his Carriage was always mild to every body.

*Remark.*

It is observable, that the Lieutenant never heard any of the Captain's Threatning, but was told it by the Surgeon and Clerk, who both own, that it was spoken to them in private. The Master cannot tell how to believe it, nor the Men neither; for they never heard any thing of it, nor felt any of its Effects.

---

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 6.*

We were carried to the South-westward, nigh the Rocks on the south Shore of *Cape Dobbs*, by the Tide of Ebb, and drove from *Wager River* six or seven Leagues.

*Master's Answer to Query 6.*

We were carried S. E. b. S. as the Course of the Land lies by Compass, from the River's Mouth towards *Cape Dobbs*, until we met the Channel ebb from the W. b. S. by Compass.

*Remark.*

The Clerk, in Part of his Answer to this Query, says, at this time the Master prevaricates, for fear, as he says, he should be any Man's Ruin. Query, Does the Clerk believe that any Man's Ruin can depend on the Truth of either of their Answers?

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 7.*

We ply'd with Sails and Oars to the Eastward to get out of a Tide of Flood, which I apprehend and believe came from the South-west, for fear of being horfed into *Wager* River again.

*Surgeon's Answer to Query 7.*

We ply'd to the North-eastward with Sails, Ship's Oars, and two Boats a Head, to be out of the Tide of Flood from the Southward, leaft it should drive us up the River *Wager* again.

*Clerk's Answer to Query 7.*

We halled away to the eastward with all the Sail we could croud, rowing with the Ship's Oars, and towing with the Boats, to avoid our being forced into the River *Wager* again, by a Tide of Flood that came from the south-westward.

*Master's Answer to Query 7.*

When we failed out of the River *Wager*, we ply'd to the eastward with Sails and Oars, to get out of the Indraft of the River's Flood from the eastward, but not from the southward, until you get within the Indraft of the River, and then indeed the Flood hath the Course as in all Inlets.

*Affidavit of T. Towns.*

He is certain, of his own Knowledge, that all the way from the *Frozen* Strait to the River *Wager*, the Tide of Flood came from the eastward.

*Affidavit of Ulrich Von Sobrick.*

The Flood Tide which flows up the River *Wager*, in at its Mouth, comes all from the east, or the east by north, the Course of the new Strait by Compass.

*Remark.*

! Remark.

The Clerk will have it, that they sailed away to the eastward, with all the Sail they could crowd: If he will look into the Journals, he may find that from eight to twelve it was flat Calm.

*Lieutenant's Journal, August 4.*

I several times try'd the Tide, and found the Flood came from the east.

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 9.*

That the Neap Tides are higher with a north-westerly Wind at *Churchill*, than the Spring Tides with an easterly Wind, is known by every Person who has any Knowledge of the Tides in *Churchill* River.

*J. Macbeath's Affidavit.*

He, this Deponent, was employed five Years on board one of the Company's Sloops at *Churchill*, and says, that he took notice always near *Churchill* a N. E. Wind, when it blew any thing of a Gale, did make the highest Tides, and that the least Tides were when it blew a south-west Wind.

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 10.*

The Tide at the Point near *Brook Cobham* in Latitude  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , nigh the Land, was as rapid as that at *Wager* River. — The Course of the Tide, which was very impetuous, being never tried but once at that Place.

*Surgeon's Answer to Query 10.*

The Rapidity of the Tide here filled several aboard with Joy and Hopes of finding a Passage, without going much farther northward.

*Clerk's Answer to Query 10.*

I never saw more rapid Tides at any Place than near *Brook Cobham*, in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ .

N

Lieute-

Remark.

*Lieutenant's Journal, July 5.*

The Tide was tried several times, and found to run two Miles an Hour from the N. E. b. E. by Compass the Day before the Full Moon; and I take it to be the Flood from the eastward.

*Master's Answer to Query 10.*

The Tide near the Head Land, in Latitude 63° 20', as we went northward from *Churchill River*, was tried several times, and run two Miles an Hour from the eastward: But Land-men on board, and Sailors also, if not well acquainted with Navigation, may, in such Cases where the Ship is under Sail, the Boat at Anchor, or the Current Log riding her, be easily led into false Conclusions.

*Master's Answer to Query 14.*

The Tide we found in 63° 20' in Shore, was not half so strong as what we found in the new Strait, between the River *Wager* and *Cape Hope* in the Narrows, which I tried several times myself when almost calm, and it broke our deep Sea-Line in bringing up our small Boat, and lost our Grapling.

*Clerk's Answer to Query 11.*

I am very sure from a Channel we saw, which disjoined from the low Beach, and another that I saw to the northward, as well as from the Gunner's and Carpenter's Account, that the Land we then stood upon, was an Island washed on all Sides by the Sea the Ships were in.

*Master's Answer to Query 11.*

The Captain strictly enquired of the Carpenter and Gunner concerning the *Frozen Strait*, whether the Place they were landed upon, was an Island or

no?

no?  
see f

W  
ter,  
Flood  
north  
the F  
Water

T  
he re  
gave  
four  
Shore  
all; a  
water

Trans  
sign  
by

On  
ing,  
in on  
dleton  
fifteen  
Carpe  
Crew,  
twelve  
Straits  
saw th

By  
Flood



no? They answered, It was not; for they could see further than he.

*Clerk's Answer to Query II.*

When we came to the Boat, it was near low Water, and the Captain ask'd which way the Tide of Flood ran? and was told it made its Course to the northward. About 7 o'Clock that Evening, he took the Height of the Tide, it being at that time low Water, and three Days after the Full of the Moon.

*Master's Answer to Query II.*

The Captain took the Height of the Tide when he returned to the Boat. By the Account the Men gave him when he got back, the Tide had flow'd four Feet; and he afterwards found by the Marks on Shore, that it had flow'd fifteen or sixteen Feet in all; and that a W. or W. b. S. Moon made High-water.

*Transactions mentioned in the Council of August 8, signed by the Lieutenant and Master, and confirmed by the Gunner and Carpenter.*

On the seventh (of August) at ten in the Morning, after we were confirm'd that the Flood came in on the north Side from the E. b. S. Capt. Middleton went ashore in the Boat, and found it flow'd fifteen Feet three Days after the full Moon. The Carpenter and Gunner, who were two of the Boat's Crew, many of our People being very ill, went twelve or fifteen Miles on the south Side of these Straits, and on the highest Hills they could find, saw the Passage that this Flood came in at.

*Remark.*  
By the Clerk's Account there could have been no Flood at all during the whole time that the Captain

was absent from the Boat: How then could he ask which way the Tide of Flood ran?

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 12.*

I could never properly distinguish the Head Lands in our Return from *Capt Frigid* to *Brook Cobham*; and did not come nearer to the west Shore than five or six Leagues. We search'd neither Inlets nor Bays, nor came we near enough to any Land to the westward to distinguish it.

*Surgeon's Answer to Query 12.*

I do not remember we were nearer the west Shore than 5 or 6 Leagues; so could not discover whether it was Islands or broken Lands, Inlets or Bays, or a main Continent, and seldom discern'd the Land, except some high Bluff Point amongst the Clouds.

*Clerk's Answer to Query 12.*

It appears from the different Journals and Log-Books, that we were not nearer to that Land than five or six Leagues.

*Log-Books.*

The Log-Books make it appear, that they never were more than once or twice, when they lay to in the Night, above three or four Leagues off it.

*Master's Answer to Question 12.*

We made sure to search all the west Shore so near as to see the Bottoms of the Bays, and plainly make the main Land. We went within three or four Leagues of most Places, and where it was bold, we came within two Leagues, as off the Head Land, where we found the Tide to run two Miles an Hour in Latitude  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , and from Latitude  $64^{\circ}$  to *Brook Cobham*, we were sure of the main Land all the way.

*Lieute-*

*Lieutenant's Journal August 10.*

— wore Ship, the north Shore from N. E. to N.N.W. the nearest Distance four or five Leagues— the north Shore bearing from N. by E. to E. by N. kept as near the Shore as we could to see if there were any Openings or Passages in the Land— continued sailing in sight of the main Land of the north Shore, quite from *Cape Hope*. Halted off to deepen our Water— I find by coasting along shore of the *Welcome* from the *Frozen Straits* to this Place (the Head Land in Latitude  $63^{\circ} 20'$ ) that it is the main Land, though there are several small Islands and deep Bays. This Head Land, and the other in  $64^{\circ}$  Latitude, make a deep Bay. In our Passage out, we did not see the Bottom of it, as we have done since, and by keeping close in shore, we have seen several black Whales.

*Affidavit of T. Towns.*

The Captain had the Discovery at heart above all things; for he seem'd overjoy'd at every thing that seem'd to promise it, and kept a constant Look out and Examination of all Shores, keeping sometimes eight and forty Hours upon Deck, at a time which must be very fatiguing in those Parts to a Man in his bad State of Health.

*Affidavit of Ulrich Von Sobriek.*

All the way between *Brook Cobbam* and *Cape Dobbs*, they were sure of the main Land, and were never above three or four Leagues off the Land, except in one or two Places, where meeting with shoal Water, they laid to in the Night-time, that they might not pass any Place unseen, and stood in shore in the Day. Off the Head Land in Latitude  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , they were not two Leagues from Shore.

*Affidavit**Lieute-*

*Affidavit of Gra. Grant.*

Capt. *Middleton* was careful above all things to search all Shores, and chose to lay by in the Night, rather than pass by any Straits or Inlets that might afford a Passage.

*Master's Answer to Query 13.*

The Reason the Boat was not sent a shore to try the Tides, was, that when she was mann'd, we could not find Men to work the Ship, or reef a Sail, or hand one. — They grew worse and worse every day, and we had not above six in both Watches, besides three or four Officers.

*Surgeon's Answer to Query 13.*

There was never any Boat sent on Shore, nor no Search made near the west Land: I do not know any Reason why we did not; for out of fifty-three Men and Boys, we brought out of *Churebill*, we had but eight that were incapable of doing their Duty.

*Affidavit of T. Towns.*

Through the Sicknefs and Lameness of a great many, and the Unskilfulness of some, the Ships would not in all probability have ever reach'd *England* again, if it had pleas'd God to take away Capt. *Middleton*.

*Affidavit of Ulrich Von Sobriek.*

Out of above twenty Men which they had on board the Discovery from *Churebill* home, there were not four or five in a Watch, able to go aloft, or hand or reef a Sail; though this Ship was better mann'd than the *Furnace*, insomuch, that in *Wager* River, they were forc'd to send most of their Hands aboard the *Furnace*, where they had few but sick Men.

Surgeon's

*Surgeon's Answer to Query 17.*

The two *Indians* gave us an Account of a River or Straits, salt Water and deep, a great Number of large black Fish spouting up the Water, and that they were five Days in crossing it, and that there was a Copper-mine on the Side of the River or Straits; and that from the best Account I could gather from them, it was somewhere thereabouts.

*Master's Answer to Query 17.*

We had no manner of Account from the *Indians* of any Passage on the Coast where we went, neither did I hear so much as one word mentioned about it, either whilst they were with us or since till now, nor concerning black Fish near the Copper-Mine.

*Master's Answer to Query 18.*

The Captain told us, that he had promised both the Governor and the Friends of the northern *Indians* to put them safe on Shore, so that they might get to their own home, or to *Churchill*.

*Clerk's Answer to Query 18.*

The Reasons Capt. *Middleton* gave for putting them ashore were, as he said, lest those *Indians*, when they came to *England*, should, by their Chattering of the Copper-Mine, and Straits thereabouts, put the Government to the Expence of fitting out Ships again, to make trial of a Passage that way once more.

*Surgeon's Answer to Query 18.*

The Captain ordered them into an old leaky Boat, with two Oars, Mast and Sails, which neither of them knew well how to manage, in a strange Place they did not know, and in the midst of their mortal Enemies. But all this would not prevail on

*Surgeon's*

the



the Captain; for they were actually forc'd over the Ship's Side into the Boat.

*Master's Answer to Query 18.*

The Boat was very well, and they might easily manage her, as they had been shewn, what Distance they had to Shore, or along Shore, as they pleas'd: they knew their way home well enough, as they told us, and were sufficiently fortified against all the Men of the Country, having Fire-arms, well stock'd with Ammunition, and more of every thing than they could well carry. They were but 250 Miles from their own Country, or the Company's Factory, which is nothing for an *Indian* to travel.

*Affidavit of T. Towns.*

The two northern *Indians* were so far from being forced into a leaky Boat against their Will, that they went voluntarily into a good tight Boat, which this Deponent saw well caulk'd two Days before, and seem'd highly pleas'd at their Departure, as well they might; for they had more Arms, Ammunition and Goods given them, than they could have traded in seven Years.

*Affidavit of G. Grant.*

They departed in a good tight Boat, highly pleas'd with the large Stock of Presents, Ammunition and Arms, they had received from the Captain,

*Affidavit of T. Cooper.*

When they saw what Presents and Arms the Captain had ordered to be delivered to them, they both seem'd highly pleas'd, and willing to depart; and both went voluntarily into the Boat, which was a good tight one, without the least Forcing or Compulsion.

Lieutenant's



*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 20.*

I believe that some of the Officers on board were discouraged and discountenanced from being inquisitive about it, or making Observations, which might promote the intended Discovery.

*Clerk's Answer to Query 20.*

\_\_\_\_\_ by discountenancing and discouraging every one on board—and making what he thought most conducive to his Design on the Log-board.

*Lieutenant's Answer to Query 20.*

I can't say that the Captain discouraged or discountenanced me in making any Discovery — nor did I ever hear the Captain threaten to take their Books and Papers from them, or give Orders that nothing should be enter'd in the Log-book, which should give any hopes of a Passage.

*Master's Answer to Query 5.*

I have heard (the Captain) say, that he would put up with all that could be endured, rather than the Discovery should be baulk'd. He never hindered any body from keeping what Account they would, and would always readily instruct any Officer that would ask him in observing the Latitude, Variation, or any other curious Matter; and shew'd several how to keep Journals, that had never been at Sea before.

*Master's Answer to Query 20.*

The Captain seem'd on all Occasions heartily to encourage the Discovery, and was ever free in communicating, and instructing every Officer and Man on board, either in Navigation or the Seaman's Part, as none is better qualified to do it: And the Lieutenant and myself have experienced the Benefit thereof, and must own it; and to represent him in

any other Light, I am thoroughly satisfied, is doing him barbarous Injustice.

*Affidavit of T. Towns.*

Captain *Middleton's* Behaviour, as far as this Deponent ever saw or heard, was very kind and mild. He never did threaten to punish any Man for offering his Mind with freedom about the Conduct used in the intended Discovery; and he believes he had the Discovery at heart above all things.

*Affidavit of Ulrich Von Sobriek.*

Captain *Middleton's* Treatment was very kind both to Officers and Men; and nobody could take more Pains and Care in making all kinds of Observations, which might help towards a Discovery; as also in instructing others who were ignorant, to do the like.

*Affidavit of Grance Grant.*

He never heard, that the Captain threatened to punish any one for speaking his Mind about the Discovery; but on the contrary, he was always courteous in his Behaviour to his Officers, and kind to all, sometimes when they did not deserve it.

*Affidavit of T. Cooper.*

He never heard, or was inform'd, of any high or harsh Words that passed between Capt. *Middleton* and any of his Officers; or that he did in any wise threaten to punish any Man for speaking his Mind about the Discovery; or that he threatned to break open any one's Chest to come at Papers or Journals; but that on the contrary, he was at all times mild to every body; and that by his encouraging every one under Difficulties and Hardships, this Deponent did and still does sincerely believe, that he earnestly desired to make and complete the Discovery.

satisfied, is do-

far as this De-  
kind and mild.  
Man for offer-  
Conduct used  
believes he had  
gs.

orick.  
was very kind  
body could take  
inds of Obser-  
a Discovery ;  
gnorant, to do

t.  
threatened to  
nd about the  
e was always  
cers, and kind  
deserve it.

of any high or  
*Middleton* and  
wise threaten  
ind about the  
reak open any  
hals ; but that  
mild to every  
ery one under  
nent did and  
nestly desired

PENDIX.

---

---

# A P P E N D I X.

## I.

*By the Commissioners for executing the Office of Lord  
High Admiral of Great Britain and Ireland, &c.*

**W**HEREAS we have, in Obedience to his Majesty's Commands, ordered the *Furnace* Sloop, whereof you are Commander, to be fitted out in a proper Manner to proceed on a Voyage towards *Hudson's Strait*, in order to attempt the Discovery of a Passage that Way into the Western *American Ocean*, and have appointed the *Discovery Pink*, *William Moor* Master, (who is hereby required and directed to follow your Orders) to attend you on that Service, you are hereby required and directed, so soon as the said Sloop and Pink are ready for the Sea, to fall down to the *Nore*, and when they have been paid what is due to their Companies, to proceed to *Leith*, and deliver the inclosed Packet to Captain *Holburne*, Commander of his Majesty's Ship the *Dolphin*, containing Orders to the said Captain to proceed in Company with you, as far as the Islands of *Orkney*, for your better Security against the Privateers of the Enemy, said to be cruising thereabouts.

You are accordingly to proceed in Company with the said Ship *Dolphin* as far as the aforesaid Islands, and then to make the best of your Way with the Sloop and Pink under your Command towards *Hudson's Strait*, and after passing the same, to proceed to *Carey's Swan's Nest* ; and then steer North-westerly, so as to fall in with the

North-west Land at Sir *Thomas Roe's Welcome*, or *ne ultra*, near the Latitude of 65 Degrees North.

You are there to make the best Observations you can of the Heighth, Direction and Course of the Tides, bearing of the Lands, Depth and Soundings of the Sea, and Shoals, with the Variation of the Needle.

When you come up with *Whalebone Point* in 65° you are to try the best Passage in doubling that Land, whether to Eastward or Westward, in case it be an Island; and on which Side soever you meet the Tide at Flood, to direct your Course so as to meet the Tide, whether North-westerly or South-westerly.

If after, in doubling that Cape, you find either a Strait or an open Sea, you are to keep on your Course, still meeting the Tide of Flood; and if it be so wide as to lose Sight of Land, then keep to the Larboard or *American Shore*, steering South-westerly, so as to take the Bearings of the Lands, and Soundings; and observe whether there are any Inlets, Bays, or Rivers, to shelter the Ships, in case bad Weather, or contrary Winds, oblige you to take Harbour; and there make the best Plans you can of such Harbours, and the Charts of the Coast.

You must make no Stay any where, whilst Wind and Weather permits, (except in making Observations for your Safety in your Return) until you get to the Southward of 60 Degrees North; and then, if you continue to find an open Sea, make more careful Observations of the *American Coast* or Islands, and of the Head-lands, Bays, and Rivers, until you make the Latitude of 50 Degrees, or any more southerly Latitude, in case you find it convenient to winter on the western Side of *America*; but if you should find it more convenient to return into the Bay to winter, or can make your Passage home in

Time, after making a Discovery of the Passage to the Western *American* Ocean, (which is more eligible) in order to prosecute the Discovery to Advantage next Season, then you need proceed no farther southerly than 50 or 60 Degrees Latitude, and make all proper Observations of the Tides, Bays, Head-lands, Shoals, and Rocks on both Sides, if the Passage be narrow, or on which ever Side the Wind and Weather permits you, with the Variation, or any other curious Observations you can make.

If you find any Inhabitants upon the Coast, or any populous Nations to the Southward, you are to endeavour by all proper Means, to cultivate a Friendship and Alliance with them, presenting them with such Trifles as they value, and shewing them all possible Civility and Respect; but to take Caution, if they be numerous, not to let yourself be surprized, but to be constantly on your Guard against any Accidents.

If you find it proper to winter on the other Side of the Passage, get to a warm Climate not more northerly than 42 D. in some safe Harbour, that may be of Use in a future Settlement; and rather in an Island, if there be a good Harbour, which would be safer than on the Continent for an infant Settlement.

If your Place of wintering is within a proper Distance to be supplied by the Natives on the Continent, take proper Seeds, of Fruit-Trees, Plants, Grain and Pulse, and sow them in the Spring, or in case you find any civilized Nation, who want such Kinds, you may present some to them, and make them sensible of their Use and Manner of Culture.

In Places where you meet with Inhabitants, make Purchases with their Consent, and take Possession  
of



of convenient Situations in the Country, in the Name of his Majesty of *Great Britain*.

But where there are no Inhabitants, you must take Possession by setting up proper Inscriptions, as first Discoverers and Possessors.

If in your Passage you meet with any Ships trading to the western Countries, eastward of *Japan*, or any *Japanese* Ships, and you apprehend any Danger from them, either from their Force or Number, you are to proceed no farther in the Discovery, but immediately to return, that Ships of sufficient Force may be sent out next Season, to begin a Trade, or make a Settlement, without any Apprehension of Disturbance from any powerful Nation on that Side, lest any Accident should prevent your Return, and discourage any further Attempts to be made for the future.

If you should arrive at *California* without any Apprehension of Danger, and chuse to winter in 42 D. (where *Caxton* is said to have found a civilized Nation and good Harbour) or more southerly, then endeavour to meet Captain *Anson* in the Month of *December*, before the Arrival of the *Manila* Ship at *Cape St. Lucas*, the southern Cape of *California*, and leave a Copy of your Journal with him, lest any Accident should happen to you upon your Return, and so the Discovery be lost, and it might prevent Ships being sent out to your Relief in case of Shipwreck.

But for as much, as in an Undertaking of this Nature, several Emergencies may arise, not to be foreseen, and therefore not so particularly to be provided for by Instructions beforehand, you are in such Case to proceed, as, upon Advice with your Officers, you shall judge may be most advantageous to the Service on which you are employed.

When you return home, you are to proceed into the River of *Thames*, and send our Secretary an Account

Acc  
Info  
Ma

To C  
j

By  
H

Y  
give  
Ship  
son's  
and  
any  
then

174

To C



Account of your Arrival and Proceedings, for our Information. Given under our Hands the 20th of May, 1741.

CHA. WAGER,  
THO. FRANKLAND,  
GLENORCHY.

To Captain Middleton, Commander of His Majesty's Sloop the Furnace. Deptford.

By Command of their Lordships.

Thomas Corbett.

II.

By the Commissioners for executing the Office of Lord High-Admiral of Great Britain and Ireland, &c.

YOU are hereby required and directed during the Course of your intended Voyage, not to give any Disturbance or Molestation to any of the Ships or Sloops employ'd in the Service of the *Hudson's-Bay* Company, but to give them all Protection and Assistance that lies in your Power, whenever any Opportunities offer of your being serviceable to them. Given under our Hands the 29th of May, 1741.

CHA. WAGER,  
VERE BEAUCLERK,  
GLENORCHY.

To Capt. Middleton, Commander of His Majesty's Sloop Furnace.

By Command of their Lordships!

Thomas Corbett.

III.

III.

Hudson's-Bay Company to their Governor Mr. James Duffield, and Hudson's-Bay House London Counsel at Moose River Fort, May the 30th, 1741.

GENTLEMEN,

Notwithstanding our former Orders to you, if Capt. Middleton (who is sent abroad into the Governments Service to discover a Passage to the North-west) should be obliged to resort to you, you are then to give him the best Assistance in your Power. We remain,

Your loving Friends,

Bibye Lake, Gov.  
Benj. Pitts, D. G.  
William Eleclerton,  
J. Winter,  
Ab. Lake,  
John-Anth. Merle.

IV.

A Council off Cary Swans Nest.

At a Council held on Board His Majesty's Sloop Furnace, August the 1st, 1741, in the Latitude of 60° 22' north, Longitude 87° 44' west, Wind N. by W.

P R E S E N T,

Capt. Christop. Middleton, President,  
Wm. Moor, Master of the Discovery,  
John Rankin, Lieutenant,  
Robert Wilson, Master,

The Question was put, and taken into Consideration, Whether it would be proper to proceed upon a Discovery of a Passage from Hudson's-Bay to the

the *South-Sea* directly, or to repair with his Majesty's Sloop *Furnace* and *Discovery* Pink to *Churchill* River in *Hudson's-Bay*, as the Season of the Year is too far advanced to proceed to the *Ne Ultra*, and there being a Necessity of securing the Vessels, and providing Necessaries for Wintering as soon as possible: And it was unanimously

*Resolv'd*, That considering the Rigour of the Winter in these Parts of the World, the want of every thing necessary for building Lodgings for the Men, and a convenient Place for securing the Vessels from the Danger of the Ice; the Necessity of digging Store-rooms for the Provisions, no Brandy, Spirits, or Strong Beer being Proof against the Severity of the Winter above Ground; the Uncertainty of securing the Vessels after the Frost comes on, which usually happens in the Beginning of *September*: and the Obstructions we may possibly meet with in our Passage, by Fogs, Calms, Ice and contrary Winds:

That it would be the best and surest Method for the Service in general to proceed directly for *Churchill* River in *Hudson's-Bay*, there to secure his Majesty's Vessels *Furnace* and *Discovery*, with their Provisions, Stores and Ammunition, and to provide convenient Winter-Quarters, Firing, and necessary Cloathing for their respective Companies, and to wait for the breaking up of the Ice the next Year, and then to attempt the Discovery of a Passage from *Hudson's-Bay* to the *South-Sea*.

*Christopher Middleton,*  
*John Rankin,*  
*William More,*  
*Robert Wilson.*

Mr. James  
London Coun-  
cil, 1741.

ers to you, if  
road into the  
assage to the  
esort to you,  
tance in your

riends,  
ake, Gov.  
itts, D. G.  
n Elelerton,  
ter,  
ake,  
Anth. Merle.

Nest.  
Majesty's Sloop  
in the La-  
87° 44' west,

T.  
ent,  
bery,

into Confide-  
o proceed up-  
*Hudson's-Bay* to  
the

VI.

**A**T a Council held at the New Fort, *Churchill* River, *March* the 21st, 1741-2.

P R E S E N T,

*Capt. Christopher Middleton,*

*John Rankin,* Lieutenant,

*William Moor,* Master and Commander of the *Discovery.*

*Robert Wilson,* Master of the *Furnace.*

It is taken into Consideration, Whether it would be necessary for the Service his Majesty's Sloop *Furnace* is ordered upon to make the following Alterations, which were mentioned by a Letter from *Capt. Middleton* to *Sir Jacob Ackworth*, and for want of time could not be effected, *viz.* the Quarter-Deck to be made flush with the present main Deck, by having a slight one laid over the former, and a Companion Way thereupon made to go down into the Steerage; the former Passage thereto being not only inconvenient, but very dangerous for Persons coming from below to go forwards, when the Capstun is in use, as *Capt. Middleton* by sad Experience found, being jamm'd between the End of a Capstun Bar and the Companion.

And it was Resolved, That considering the high and traverse Seas in this Part of the World, and the Probability of shipping large Quantities of Water, it is absolutely necessary to have the Quarter-Deck made flush with the Main-Deck, the Sloop to be steer'd with a Wheel, dead Lights hung with Hinges to be fixed to the great Cabbin Windows, which will make more room for the Capstun than is at present, and which we shall be obliged to use very frequently upon our entering or coming out of Harbours, warping among Ice, and upon Account

of  
Alt  
Slo  
Har

A  
12th

T  
nace  
that  
ten  
every  
with  
Nec  
as  
ferior  
Refo  
safest  
said  
best  
beyon  
conv  
as th  
use

of trying the Tides ; and it is our Opinions those Alterations ought to be made before his Majesty's Sloop *Furnace* proceeds to Sea. Given under our Hands this 21st Day of *March* 1741-2.

*Christopher Middleton,*  
*John Rankin,*  
*Wm. Moor,*  
*Robert Wilson.*

VII.

AT a Council held on board his Majesty's Ship *Furnace*, in Sir *Thomas Roe's Welcome*, the 12th Day of *July*, 1742.

P R E S E N T,

*Capt. Christopher Middleton,*  
*Lieutenant John Rankin,*  
*Wm. Moor, Master and Commander of the*  
*Discovery,*  
*Robert Wilson, Master of the Furnace.*

The manifest Hazard of his Majesty's Ships *Furnace* and *Discovery*, from the vast Quantities of Ice that surrounded them, the Sea being covered for ten Leagues to Windward, and the Ships driving every Tide nearer the Land, and at that time within two Miles of the Shore ; that there was a Necessity of turning back or seeking some Harbour, as soon as might be, to secure the Ships, was taken seriously into Consideration, and it was unanimously Resolv'd, that it would be the most eligible and safest Method for the Preservation of his Majesty's said Ships, and the Lives of the Men, to make the best of our way to an Inlet or Strait, that appear'd beyond *Whalebone-Point*, there to seek out some convenient Place to secure the Ships, till such time as the *Welcome* should be clear'd of Ice, and then use our utmost Endeavours for proceeding on our



Discovery. In witness whereof we have hereunto  
set our Hands the Day and Year above-written.

*Christopher Middleton,  
John Rankin,  
Wm. Moor,  
Robert Wilson.*

## VIII.

*Lieutenant's Report, Sunday July the 25th, 1742.*

**I** Was ordered to take the Master with me in the  
eight oar'd Boat, to sound in the Channel to  
the northward of the Islands in the River, and to  
see for a Harbour for our Ships, near the Mouth of  
the River, for a safe Retreat, if need be, but I  
could find none on the north Side; but I saw several  
Openings or Coves on the south Side, but I  
could not get near them; for the River was very  
full of Ice from Side to Side.

I made the best of my way up to the Ships from  
near the River's Mouth; I got up to the Island off  
the Mouth of *Savage* Sound or River, the Tide  
came down upon me, and all the Ice, with such  
Force and Swiftnes, that our Boat must have been  
smashed into a thousand Pieces, if we had not got  
her instantly into a Cove, or large Field of Ice:  
we were inclosed with so much Ice, many large  
Pieces, some of them drew nine or ten Fathoms  
Water; we were forced upon the south Shore with  
great Swiftnes, and many Pieces were forced upon  
the Rocks, and others against them with great  
Force; we were forced off again near the Middle  
of the River, and carried out of the River's Mouth  
with the Tide of Ebb above five Leagues, before  
we could see the least Opening among the Ice, to  
get the Boat out. About four or five in the Morn-  
ing, the 26th, the Ice opened a little, I got the  
Boat out of the Cove, and forced her through the  
Ice,



Ice, it having little or no Motion; the Flood Tide being made, we got among loose Ice, and sailed towards the north Shore. About twelve at Noon, the 26th, we got in under the Islands on the north Side, at the Mouth of the River, we lay the Tide off Ebb, and got on board of the Ship at half an Hour past nine at Night.

July 27th, 1742.

John Rankin.

IX.

*My Order to the Lieutenant and Master.*

*By Capt. Christopher Middleton, Commander of his Majesty's Ship Furnace.*

**W**Hereas I ordered you and the Master to sound in the Channel on the north Side of the Islands in this River, and to look out for a Harbour for the Ships near the Mouth thereof, but finding by your Report, that there is none to be found on the north Side, and the River being very full of Ice, there was no approaching the south Side; it also having been hinted to me, that there was some hopes of a Passage or Inlet into the Sea, from the Risings of the Tides at or near *Deer Sound*, black Whales having been seen thereabouts, and it being impossible to move the Ships with Safety, while such Bodies of Ice are now in the River, and continue to drive with the Tides; you and the Master are hereby required and directed to take the six-oar'd Boat, and proceed up the River *Wager* as far as *Deer Sound* before-mentioned, and to be as particular as may be of the Flux of the Tides, their Direction and Height at that Place and near it, and particularly to note whether the Flood in the River *Deer Sound* comes from this River or some other, and to make strict Enquiry, whether the black Whales can have any other Passage from the

the Sea into this River, than that where his Majesty's Ships *Furnace* and *Discovery* came in at, and to report to me, under your Hands, at your Return, which is to be as speedy as the Nature of the Service you are ordered upon will permit, what Observations you make thereof, and for so doing this shall be your sufficient Warrant. Dated on board his Majesty's Ship *Furnace*, the 27th Day of July 1742.

Christopher Middleton.

To Lieutenant John Rankin, and Robert Wilson, Master of His Majesty's Ship, *Furnace*.

X.

*The Lieutenant's and Master's Report,*

Pursuant to an Order from Capt. Christopher Middleton, Commander of his Majesty's Ship the *Furnace*, bearing Date the 27th of July, 1742.

WE, whose Names are hereunto subscrib'd, took the *Furnace's* six-oar'd Boat, and went from *Savage Sound*, where his Majesty's Ships *Furnace* and *Discovery* then lay; and on the 28th, at one in the Morning, arriv'd at *Deer Sound*, where we tried the Tide, and found the Flood to come into that Place from the River *Wager*, and rose at that time ten Feet. At six o'Clock the same Morning we left *Deer Sound*, (where we put the two northern *Indians* ashore to kill some Deer for our sick Men) and sail'd for a high bluff Land on the N. W. Side of the River *Wager*. Our Course from the Islands on the north Side of *Deer Sound* to the high bluff Land, was N. W. b. N. by Compass; we sound'd frequently, and had no Ground with a Line of sixty-eight Fathoms all the way over. When we were a-breast of the high bluff Land, we steer'd  
W. N. W.

W. N. W. keeping the Mid-channel, and still found no Ground at 98 Fathom, except nigh some Islands that lay in the fair Way about one third over the River, and 30 Fathoms within a League of one of them. This Course we kept till we got about 15 Leagues from *Deer Sound*, but finding the Tide or Fresh against us, and the Wind coming fair, we were afraid to stay any longer, for fear of hindering the Ships from going to Sea; however, we came to a Grapnell with the Boat, and went upon a high mountainous Land, where we had a very fair View of the River. From thence we saw a great Run or Fall of Water between the suppos'd main Land and the aforesaid Islands, very narrow, seemingly not a Mile broad, and about a League from where the Boat lay; but to the northwards we discovered a large Collection of Water, in which were several Islands, and high mountainous Land on both Sides of it, the west Side having many bluff Points, and broken Land. In our Return towards the Ships, and not far from *Deer Sound*, we saw several large black Whales, of the Whalebone kind, some of which came very near the Boat. So that upon the whole, we think there may be some other Passage into the Sea from the River *Wager*, besides that which his Majesty's Ships *Furnace* and *Discovery* came in at, and imagine there is a great Probability of an Opening or Inlet into the Sea, somewhere on the east Side thereof, tho' we cannot fix the Place. Given under our Hands this first Day of *August*, 1742.

*John Rankin,*  
*Robert Wilson.*

## XI.

**A**T a Council held the 8th Day of *August*, 1742,  
on Board His Majesty's Ship *Furnace*.

## P R E S E N T,

*Capt. Christop. Middleton*, President,  
*Wm. Moor*, Master and Commander of the  
*Discovery*,  
*John Rankin*, Lieutenant,  
*Robert Wilson*, Master,

*The following Transactions were read, and unanimously  
agreed to, viz.*

*August* the 3d, 1742. Unmoor'd and sail'd out of  
*Wager* River, that River and the Straits being pretty  
clear of Ice, in pursuit of our *Discovery*. The 4th  
having contrary Winds and Calms, made but little  
Northing. On the 5th by Noon, got into the La-  
titude of  $66^{\circ} 14'$ , but met with much Ice and strong  
Tides. The same Day in the Evening, we disco-  
vered on the north Side of our new Straits, a Cape  
or Head Land, bearing N, the Land on the south  
Side lyeth E. b. N. and W. b. S. and on the other  
Side N. b. W. which gave us all great Joy and  
Hopes of its being the extream north Part of *Ame-  
rica*. We could see little or no Land to the north-  
ward of it, and deep Waters, very high Land, and  
strong Tides, when we were 4 or 5 Leagues short  
of it. This *Capt. Middleton* named *Cape Hope*. We  
turn'd or work'd round it the same Night, and got  
5 or 6 Leagues to the N. by W. before we could  
see any otherwise than fair and wide Straits; but  
the 6th Day about Noon, after having got into the  
Latitude of  $66^{\circ} 40'$ , found we were embay'd, and  
by 2 in the Afternoon, could not go above 3  
Leagues farther, having tried the Tides all the  
Forenoon

Forenoon till 2 o'Clock in the Afternoon, but found neither Ebb nor Flood, yet deep Water. From this it was concluded, that we had overshot the Straits on the north Shore, where we found strong Tides that came from the E. b. S. but apparently no Passage; and as there was no proceeding above 3 or 4 Leagues farther, it was agreed upon by all to return back and search narrowly for the Straits, by finding from whence the Floods came. On the 7th, at 10 in the Forenoon, after we were confirmed the Flood came in on the north Side from E. b. S. Capt. *Middleton* went on Shore in the Boat, and found it flowed 15 Feet three Days after the Full, and a W. b. S. Moon made high Water. Capt. *Middleton*, together with the Gunner and Carpenter (who were two of the Boat's Crew, many of our People being very ill) went 12 or 15 Miles on the south Side of these Straits, and on the highest Hills they could find, saw the Passage that this Flood came in at, the Mountain they stood upon being pretty near 9 Leagues from the Entrance of this Strait out of the Bay the Ships were in, and from whence they could see about 12 or 15 Leagues farther; but for the 18 or 20 Leagues, it was fast with Ice not yet broke up, and running away S. E. and S. S. E. by Compass, with very high Land on both Sides, about 4 Leagues broad in the narrowest, and about 6 in the widest Part, with above 20 small Islands in the Middle and Sides, and it being then the 7th of *August*, and no Appearance of its clearing this Year, and near the 67th Degree of Latitude, no anchoring the Ship, being very near deep Water close to the Shore, and much large Ice driving with the Ebb and Flood; but little Room if thick Weather should happen, which we could not but expect very soon, having had much clear Weather; for which Reasons it is agreed upon to make the best of our way out of this cold, dangerous

Q

and

Forenoon



and narrow Strait, and to make farther Observations between the Latitude of  $64^{\circ}$  and  $63^{\circ}$ , on the north Side of the *Welcome*, having seen large Openings, broken Land and Islands, with strong Tides, but had not Opportunity of trying from whence the Flood came in our Passage hither. Given under our Hands this 8th Day of *August*, 1742.

*Christopher Middleton,*  
*John Rankin,*  
*William Moor,*  
*Robert Wilson,*  
*George Axe,*  
*John Hodgson.*

## XII.

*A Copy of an Abstract of our Journal from Churchill on the Discovery to our Arrival at the Orkneys on board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, sent to the Admiralty, the Navy, and to Mr. D— in Ireland.*

**I** Sailed from *Cchurchill* the first Day of *July*, being the first Spurt of Wind I could get for sailing out of the Harbour, and continued sailing with a fair Wind, till the third, when we saw an Island, the two Extremities bearing N. b. E. and E. b. N. lying in the Latitude of  $63^{\circ} 00'$  north, and Longitude from *Cchurchill*  $3^{\circ} 40'$  east, which I take to be the same which *Fox* named *Brook Cobham*. On the fifth Day, I saw a Head Land on the north Side of the *Welcome*, bearing N. W. b. N. seven or eight Leagues distance, in the Latitude of  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , and Longitude from *Cchurchill*  $4^{\circ} 00'$  east. Here I tried the Tides several times, and found close in with the Land the Tide to run two Miles an Hour from the N. b. E. which I take to be the Flood, and by the Slacks, from several Trials, I found that a West or a W. b. N. Moon made high Water, having a



full Moon that Day. On the 8th Day, saw the north Side of the *Welcome*, with much Ice in Shore. I tried the Tide, and found it set E. N. E. two Fathoms. On the ninth, continuing my Course, and sailing through much Ice, I was obliged at length to grapple to a large Piece. The Tender did the same to keep off from the Shore, the Wind blowing us right upon it. I tried the Tide frequently, and could discover neither Ebb nor Flood by my current Log. Here we were fast jamm'd up in Ice, being totally surrounded for many Miles, and the Wind setting it right upon us, it was all Ice for ten Leagues to Windward, and were in great Danger of being forc'd a-shore; but it happily falling calm, after we had lain in this Condition two or three Days, the Pieces of Ice separated, or made small Openings, we being then within two Miles of the Shore, and with no little Difficulty haul'd the Ships from one piece to another, till we got amongst what we call Sailing Ice; that is, where there are such Intervals of Water, as a Ship, by several Traverses, may get forwards towards the intended Course. In this manner we continued till we saw a fair Cape or Head Land to the northward of *Whalebone-Point*, in the Latitude of  $65^{\circ} 10' N.$  and Longitude from *Cburchill*  $8^{\circ} 54'$  East. This I named, after my worthy Friend, *Cape Dobbs*. I had very good Soundings between the two Shores of the *Welcome*, having 46, 48, and 49 Fathoms Water. At the same time that I saw *Cape Dobbs*, I saw a fair Opening bearing N. W. which, according to my Instructions, I stood in for among the sailing Ice. It was just Flood when we entered it; the Tide running very strong, which, by Observations afterwards, I found to run five or six Miles an Hour. I run over some Rocks on the north Side of it very luckily, being just high Water, and anchored in about 34 Fathoms; but as soon as the Tide of Ebb was made, it ran so strong,

strong, and such Quantities and Bodies of Ice came down upon us, that we were obliged to steer the Ship all the time, and keep all Hands upon their Guard with Ice-poles to shove off the Ice; notwithstanding which it brought our Anchor home, and taking hold again, one of the Arms of the Anchor was broke off.

The next day, I sent my Lieutenant in the Boat to seek out some securer Place for the Ships, it being impossible to keep a-float where we were. Some *Ujki-may* Savages came off to us, but had nothing to trade, I us'd them civilly, made them some Presents, and dismissed them. As soon as I got the Ships secur'd, I employ'd all my Officers and Boats, having myself no little Share in the Labour, in trying the Tides, and discovering the Course and Nature of this Opening, and after repeated Trials for three Weeks successively, I found the Flood constantly to come from the eastward, and that it was a large River we were got into, but so full of Ice, there was no stirring the Ships, with any probability of Safety, while the Ice was driving up and down with the strong Tides. Here I lay not a little impatient to get out; went several times in my Boat towards the Mouth of the River, and from a Hill that over-look'd Part of the *Welcome*, saw that Place full of Ice; so that I found there was no time lost by our being in Security; however, I sent my Lieutenant and Master in the eight-oar'd Boat to look out for a Harbour near the Entrance of the River, but they found none, and it was a small Miracle they got on board again; for they were so jamm'd up with Ice, which driving, the strong Tides would inevitably have stove the Boat to-pieces, and all must have perished, had it not been for an Opening in a large Piece of Ice, into which they got the Boat, and with it drove out of the River's Mouth; but when the Tides lack'd, the Ice open'd

as usual, and they row'd over to the north Shore, so got in with the Flood. I several times sent the *Indians* on Shore, to see if they knew any thing of the Land, but they were quite ignorant of it. In this vexatious Condition I continued for 3 Weeks, resolving to get out the first Opportunity the River was any thing clear of Ice, and make what Discoveries I could by meeting the Flood-Tide. This River, which, by frequent Trials of the Lands, Soundings, Tides, &c. I was able to take a Draught of, I nam'd the River *Wager*, after the Right Honourable Sir *Charles Wager*, &c.

On the third of *August*, the River for the first time was a little clear of Ice, and accordingly in pursuit of our Discovery, and on the fifth by Noon got into the Latitude of  $66^{\circ} 14'$ . We had then got into a new Strait, much pester'd with Ice, and on the north Side of which we saw a Cape or Head Land bearing north; we had deep Water, and very strong Tides within four or five Leagues of it. I nam'd this Head Land *Cape Hope*, as it gave us all great Joy and Hopes of its being the extreme north Part of *America*, seeing little or no Land to the northward of it. We turned or worked round it the same Night, and got five or six Leagues to the N. b. W. before we could perceive any otherwise than a fair and wide Opening; but about Noon the sixth Day, after having got into the Latitude of  $66^{\circ} 40'$ , found we were imbay'd, and by two in the Afternoon could not go above three Leagues farther, and having tried the Tides, all the Forenoon, every two Hours till two o'Clock in the Afternoon, found neither Ebb nor Flood, yet deep Waters. From this it was concluded, that we had over-shot the Straits on the north-east Shore, from whence the Flood came; and as there was no proceeding above 3 or 4 Leagues further, it was agreed upon by all to return back and search narrowly for

a Strait or Opening near where we found the strong Tides. On the seventh, after we were confirmed the Flood came in at the north-east from the E. b. S. I went on Shore in the Boat, and found it flowed 15 Feet, three Days after the Full, and a W. b. S. Moon made high Water, I travelled twelve or fifteen Miles from Hill to Hill inland, till I came to a very high Mountain, from whence I plainly saw a Strait or Opening the Flood came in at, and the Mountain I stood upon being pretty near the Middle of this Strait, I could see both Ends of it; the whole being about 18 or 20 Leagues long, and 6 or 7 broad, and very high Land on both Sides of it, having many small Islands in the Middle and on the Sides of it; but it was all froze fast from Side to Side, and no Appearance of its clearing this Year, and near the 67th Degree of Latitude, and no anchoring the Ships, being very deep Water close to the Shore, and much large Ice driving with the Ebb and Flood, and but little Room if thick Weather should happen, which we continually expect in these Parts; it was agreed upon in Council to make the best of our way out of this dangerous narrow Strait, and to make Observations between the 64th and 62d Degree of Latitude. The *Frozen Strait* I take to run towards that which *Bylot* named *Cape Comfort*; and the Bay where *Fox* had named a Place *Lord Weston's Portland*. It is in the Latitude of  $66^{\circ} 40'$ , and  $12^{\circ} 49'$  east from *Churchill*.

Pursuant to the Resolution we bore away, and tried the Tides on the other Side the *Welcome*, founding and observing close in shore, but met with little Encouragement. On the 11th of *August*. I once more saw the Island of *Brook Cobham*, and continued trying the Tide, and still finding the Flood came from the eastward, and by coasting along the *Welcome*, was certain of its being the main Land, tho' there are several small Islands and deep

Bays,

und the strong  
ere confirmed  
rom the E. b.  
and found it  
e Full, and a  
avelled twelve  
nd, till I came  
ence I plainly  
ame in at, and  
retty near the  
th Ends of it,  
ues long, and  
both Sides of  
Middle and on  
fast from Side  
clearing this  
Latitude, and  
ep Water close  
iving with the  
if thick Wea-  
ually expect in  
ouncil to make  
gerous narrow  
ween the 64th  
Frozen Strait I  
t named *Cape*  
named a Place  
e Latitude of  
bill.  
re away, and  
the *Welcome*,  
but met with  
of *August*. I  
*Cobham*, and  
finding the  
y coasting a-  
ing the main  
nds and deep  
Bays,

Bays, and saw several black Whales of the right Whalebone kind. I work'd off and on by *Brook Cobham*, sent the northern *Indians* a-shore upon the Island, who, at their Return, gave me to understand it was not far from their Country, and desir'd I would let them go home, being tired of the Sea. I kept them with Assurances, that I would act according to my Promise; and finding no Probability of a Passage in two or three Days after, I gave them a small Boat, well fitted with Sails and Oars, the Use of which they had been taught, and loaded it with Fire-Arms, Powder, Shot, Hatchets, and every thing desirable to them. They took their leave of me, and I sent another Boat for Water, which accompanied them a-shore, the southern *Indian* being with them. The southern *Indian*, who was Linguist for the northern ones, returned with the Boat, being used to the *English* Customs at the Factory, and desirous of seeing *England*, being a willing handy Man, I brought him with me. And the same Evening, which was the 15th of *August*, I bore away for *England*, thinking to have tried the Tide at *Carey's Swan's Nest*, but could not fetch it. On the 20th saw *Mansel's Isle*. On the 21st *Cape Diggs* was in sight. On the 26th made *Cape Resolution*, and arrived at *Cairston* in *Pomona*, one of the Islands of *Orkney*; most of my Men being so very much afflicted with the Scurvy, and otherwise sick and distempered, that I shall be obliged to leave Part of them behind me, and only wait to impress Hands to carry the Ships safe to *London*. For the Particulars, I must refer you to my Journal and Draught. I shall send to the Admiralty, this Sheet of Paper being not sufficient for the particular Accidents.



## XIII.

Dear Sir,

I Had both yours from *Orkneys*, and the Duplicate you wrote when you arrived in the *Thames*, which I immediately answer'd from *Lisburn*, congratulating you upon your safe Arrival with the Ships after so dangerous a Discovery; and at the same time, expressing my Concern at your not having found the Passage, as we had reason to have expected it, if you had found things agreeable to the former Journals. I directed for you as formerly in *London-street*, near *Ratcliff-cross*, but found by a Letter I had from Mr. *Allan* last Night, that you have not got my Letter. Since I have not a Duplicate of what I wrote, I shall now again mention the chief Points I wrote to you before to be resolved in, and desire your Answer and Opinion upon the whole, and hope you will still send me the Copy of your Journal, and the Draught you made of what you discovered.

I am convinc'd from the Extract you have sent me of your Journal, that from the *Welcome* in  $64^{\circ}$ , to the Latitude of  $67^{\circ}$ , there are no Hopes of a Passage on that Coast; and if there is any, it must be further north, and consequently attended with more Difficulty; this seems to be ascertained by your finding so large a River as that of *Wager* to the northward of *Whalebone-Point*, and the Cape you have honoured me with the Name of; and if the fresh Stream there is large, the Continent through which it runs must be so much the broader in that Place. I should have been glad to have one of your northern Savages understand the Language of the *Eskimaux* Savages which came on board you, for they might then have given you some Account of that Country and neighbouring Sea, if any near it Land the westward.

You



You observed, that a W. b. N. Moon made high Water, and a W. b. S. above *Cape Hope* in  $66^{\circ} 40'$ ; consequently the Tide at the *Welcome* must flow from the other as it is later; but you not acquainting me, whether the Lands to the Eastward, or Starboard, as you sailed north, were Continuous Islands, makes me at a loss to know whether the Tide there came from the eastward or from the north-eastward by *Cape Hope*, and the new Strait you discovered from the Mountain, through which the Tide came, from near *Cape Comfort* on *Weston's Portland*, where the Strait you saw ended. Now the Difficulty I find in accounting for this, makes me desire your Opinion upon it; you have confirm'd that a W. b. N. Moon makes high Water at the *Welcome*, and a W. b. S. above *Cape Hope*. *Bylot* and *Baffin* affirm, that a S. by E. Moon makes high Water at *Cape Comfort*; if that be fact, can the Tide, in so small a Way, from *Cape Comfort* to your Bay above *Cape Hope*, be eight Points later, and only two Points later in going from *Cape Hope* to the *Welcome*, since you were there as near *Cape Comfort* as the *Welcome*, and therefore as the Strait you saw was made up of broken Lands, or Islands to the north-eastward, whether around these Islands a northern Tide might not have set about some of these Head-lands, as well as a south-eastern Tide from *Hudson's Strait*? — I also desire your Opinion, whether the great Quantity of Ice you found near the *Welcome*, not mentioned by *Fox* or *Scroggs*, was caused by the Winter's having been more severe there than usual, or whether you imagine it was the usual Quantity which is there every Year; and since you saw black Whales at the *Welcome*, from whence do you imagine they came, since none have ever been mentioned to have been seen passing or re-passing *Hudson's Strait*? These were the chief Things I would have had your Opinion upon. But

You

R

as

as upon the whole, I apprehend it would be in vain to push it any farther that way; I think the only safe way now, is by the Rivers of *Nelson*, or *Churchill*, by going up to their End, from thence descending such Rivers as fall from thence into the Western Ocean. This can only be done by laying open the Trade, and dissolving the Company for so far, and then making proper Settlements higher up upon these Rivers to the south-westward in a more temperate Climate; and therefore I desir'd your Assistance, if you approv'd of it, to inform me as much as you could of these Rivers and inland Countries, with their Climates, and what Advantages we might have by making Settlements up those Rivers, in the Bottom and western Side of the Bay, which must enlarge our Trade, and secure our Settlements there from the *French*, and regain the Trade which has been lost to them by the Monopoly of the Company.——As this, since the other has failed, would be a publick Benefit, I have been preparing all I can to inforce it, and should be glad to have what further Accounts or Materials you can furnish me with, from any Journals you have had, or Accounts of these Climates, Countries, and Trade, and then I shall make no doubt of ingaging the Merchants to join us in opening that Trade, and settling those Countries.

Lest this should miscarry, as well as my latt, I have inclosed it to Mr. *Allan* to deliver to you, and hope to have your Answer as soon as you can conveniently, with your Journals and Draught.

I wish you Health and Prosperity in all your Undertakings, and am, with great Esteem,

Dear Sir,

Your most obedient humble Servant,

Dublin, November

19th, 1742.

A———D———

XIV.

## XIV.

SIR, *London, Novemb. 27, 1742.*

I Had the Favour of yours, of the 20, ult. which happened to lie some Days at my former Habitation, before it was forwarded to me; and I shall transmit you the Chart, together with the Journal, and other Observations, by the first convenient Opportunity. In the mean time, I shall give you the best Satisfaction I am able, with relation to the Difficulties that have occur'd to you. And first, it is to be noted, that all the Land along the east Side of the *Welcome*, from 64° of Latitude to the *Frozen Straits*, is one continued level Land, somewhat like *Dungeness*, low and shingly. The great Tides you mention, which flow up the River *Wager*, and off *Cape Dobbs*, come all from the *Frozen Straits*, E. b. N. by Compass, according to the Course of the new Strait, that we passed between *Cape Dobbs* and *Cape Hope*, the mean Variation between the said Capes 40° westerly, and makes the true Course of this Strait nearest N. 40° easterly; the said Strait ends to the westward of *Cape Hope*, in a Bay 20 Leagues deep, and 15 Leagues broad, which lies W. N. W. by the true Bearings; and we carefully surrounded it, sailing up to the very Bottom within 2 or 3 Leagues, and found no Appearance of a Passage for either Tide or Vessels. All the way as I sail'd from *Cape Hope*, quite down to the Bottom of this Bay, I tried the Tide; and all round I found neither Ebb nor Flood, which must have appeared had there been any. The Land was all very high and bold, ascending into the Country to a vast Height, without any Breaks; so that had there been a Passage here we could not have missed of it.

With regard to the Tide, which you think would have been obstructed from flowing so rapidly to

t would be in  
y; I think the  
rs of *Nelson*, or  
d, from thence  
thence into the  
done by laying  
e. Company for  
ments higher up  
ward in a more  
desir'd your Af-  
to inform me as  
nd inland Coun-  
hat Advantages  
ents up thofe Ri-  
Side of the Bay,  
l secure our Set-  
and regain the  
n by the Mono-  
s, since the other  
efit, I have been  
d should be glad  
Materials you can  
s you have had,  
tries, and Trade,  
of ingaging the  
that Trade, and

ell as my last, I  
liver to you, and  
s you can conve-  
raught.

y in all your Un-  
teem,

umble Servant,

*Wager River*, if the Strait was froze fast from Side to Side.

I need only observe to you, that at *Cchurchill*, all the Winter, the Tide ebbs and flows up the River in the same manner as if there was no Ice, being lifted every Tide of Flood from 12 to 18 Feet, all except what is fast to the Ground, and falls again upon the Ebb, though 8 or 9 Feet thick. Now close to the north End of the *Frozen Straits*, is 100 Fathoms of Water or more, and probably that Depth may continue the whole Length, and then there is Passage free for the Flood and Ebb to pass without lifting; but I observed this Ice was all cracked round the Shores, and on the Island at *Cchurchill*.

You seem to be at a loss how to account for the black Whales getting to *Brook Cobham*, if they do not pass and repass by *Hudson's Straits*: Now, 'tis true, I never saw any above 20 Leagues up *Hudson's Straits*; but I have traded with *Indians* off *Nottingham* and *Diggs*, for Whalebone just fresh taken; for my own part, I cannot think these Whales come round *Cary's Swan's-Nest*, but thro' the *Frozen Straits* under the Ice; for we saw many of them in *Wager River*, and in 63° Latitude, and these may not come through *Hudson's Straits*, but to the northward, as all the north Side of *Hudson's Straits* appear to be broken Land and Islands; and *Cumberland Bay*, *Baffin's Bay*, and *Straits Davis* may have a Communication with this new *Frozen Straits*, and Whales, &c. may come from thence.

It is hardly possibly to account for the Difficulties about the Tides; for though it flows E. S. E. at *Resolution*, and S. b. E. at *Cape Diggs*, which makes five Points in running 130 Leagues; yet it is but one Point in going down to *Albony* and *Moose River*, for there it flows south, and the Distance 250 Leagues.

fast from Side  
 at *Churchill*, all  
 up the River  
 no Ice, being  
 to 18 Feet, all  
 and falls again  
 et thick. Now  
 Straits, is 100  
 probably that  
 ngth, and then  
 and Ebb to pass  
 e was all cracked  
 at *Churchill*.  
 account for the  
*bam*, if they do  
 traits: Now, 'tis  
 leagues up *Hud-*  
 with *Indians* off  
 bone, just fresh  
 nor think these  
 -*Nest*, but thro'  
 or we saw many  
 ° Latitude, and  
 's Straits, but to  
 side of *Hudson's*  
 nd Islands; and  
 Straits *Davis* may  
 w *Frozen* Straits,  
 thence.  
 for the Difficul-  
 flows E. S. E. at  
 gs, which makes  
 s; yet it is but  
 nd *Moose* River,  
 e Distance 250

So from *Humber* to *Cromer*, on the *Lincolnshire*  
 Coast (as I mentioned formerly) is but 14 Leagues,  
 and at one Place it flows W. b. S. at the other  
 N. W. Likewise from the *Frozen* Straits to *Church-*  
*ill* is but two Points difference, or one Hour and  
 half of time, (in the Distance) of 200 Leagues; so  
 that I think no Rule can be fixed, where Tides  
 flow into deep Bays, obstructed by Islands or Coun-  
 ter Tides.

The Ice I met within the *Welcome*, was most of  
 it to the northward of all the Parts before discover'd;  
 so that none who went before me could have seen  
 it; for most of it lay to the north of *Whalebone-*  
*Point*; and every Year is not alike, with respect to  
 Wind bringing it to the southward; and it is entirely  
 directed by the Winds here, as well as in all other  
 Ports of the Bay. In our way to *Churchill*, there  
 was less Ice than usually happens; and it was also  
 sooner clear in the Spring, by 15 Days than com-  
 mon.

Undoubtedly there is no Hope of a Passage to en-  
 courage any further Trial between *Churchill* and so  
 far as we have gone; and if there be any further to  
 the northward, it must be impossible for the Ice,  
 and the Narrowness of any such Outlet, in 67° or  
 68° of Latitude, it cannot be clear of Ice one Week  
 in a Year, and many Years, as I apprehend, not  
 clear at all.

In any other Attempts, I shall be glad to give  
 you all the Assistance I can, and furnish you with  
 any other Informations that you may think needful  
 to promote your Design; but I hope never to ven-  
 ture myself that way again.

My Friends being out of the Admiralty, I find  
 there will be a great deal of Difficulty to get any  
 thing done for me in the Navy at present; or to  
 procure any other Recompence for my Loss these  
 two Summers in leaving the *Hudson's-Bay* Service,  
 where



where I should have 1400 l. in the Time that I have acquired but 160 l. in the Government's. I remain, with great Sincerity and Respect,

SIR, Your most obedient humble Servant,

CHRISTOPHER MIDDLETON

P. S. The *Eskimaux*, and the Northern Indians I had with me, were utter Strangers to each other; in Manners and Language; neither could I make these *Eskimaux* understand me by the Vocabulary I had of the Language of those in *Hudson's Straits*.

DEAR SIR,

I Have your last Favour of the 27th of *October*, in Answer to the Difficulties I started, which you have fully answered; so that I am fully convinced there can be no Passage N. W. by Sea; as we seemed to have had Reason to expect; and therefore it would be very wrong to think of attempting it for the future. But I am still of Opinion, that the Publick may have a great Advantage by the *Hudson's Bay Trade*; if it be laid open, and the Country settled higher up upon these great Rivers, which run into the Bay, by *Moose*, *Albony*, the *Severn*, the *Nelson River*; and these Settlements; as the Rivers come from great Lakes to the South-west-ward of the Bay, would be in a much more temperate Climate, than at the Mouths of the Rivers, among the Swamps, where they and the Bay continue a much longer Time frozen, than farther into the Country; so that whoever would settle higher up, might have very comfortable and beneficial Settlements, and not only secure all the Country and Trade Westward of *Moose River* from the *French of Canada*, but also by making a Settlement near the Lake *Errice*, Westward of *Pensilvania*, above the great *Fall of*

Magara,



*Magara*, secure all the Navigation of the Lakes, and cut off their Communication with the *Mississippi*, and also secure a great deal of the Trade to the North Eastward of these Lakes, to *Ruperts River*, and the East Main. To shew this to more Advantage, I should want a better Description of the Rivers and Lakes to the Westward of the Bay: I have extracted from Monsieur *Jeremie*, all the Knowledge the *French* acquired, whilst they possessed *Fort Bourbon* upon *Nelson River*, who was himself some hundred Leagues up among the great Lakes which fall into *Nelson River*, which are in a temperate Climate, and run thro' rich Countries. Now if you concur in this Scheme, we might, by joining in this Scheme, and adding what further you have observed, or have collected from such of the Companies Factors or Servants, who may have been curious to search into these Rivers, give a much greater Light in the Description of those Countries and Rivers, as well as Charts of the Bay, and Account of the several Climates, as may fully convince the Publick of the Benefit to be made of these Countries, by opening the Trade, and settling upon the Rivers. I have already sketched out from what I have read, and the Journals you gave me from *Albany*, and the Nature of their Trade, what may shew the Advantage may be made of that Trade, but it will be much more compleat, from what you are capable to furnish; and if you have no Thoughts of publishing something of this Nature from yourself, I shall be glad of your joining with me in this Attempt. I know Lord *Carteret*, *Winchelsea*, and several others, who will support it, if a proper Plan be laid before them; and probably, by the Heads of these Rivers we might gain a Communication with the Nations upon the Western Sea, which may be of Advantage, tho' nothing so great, as if the Discovery had been made by Sea.

I shall

I shall be glad to have your Thoughts upon this, and what Materials you think you could furnish towards it; and if we can prepare a reasonable Plan, I shall go over and push it with all my Friends.

I have a Letter from Mr. *Samuel Smith* Yesterday, that he has forwarded to me your last Journal, and that you will send me your Draught as soon as you have got it copied, for which I am very much obliged to you.

I should be very glad to hear that you were employed in some way satisfactory to you by the Publick, which you have so just a Right to, after having quitted the Company's Service in order to serve the Publick; and wish it were in my Power to contribute to it, I should do it with great Pleasure, and would go over upon that very Account, if it could be of Advantage: In the mean Time, I wish you all Happiness, and hope to hear from you, being with great Esteem,

Dear Sir, *Your most Obliged, and Obedient humble Servant,*

Dublin, Decem. 14, 1742. A—D—

XVI.

SIR, I Was duly favoured with yours of the 14th of December; and am sorry that I could not return my Answer sooner, but the ill State of Health that I labour under, prevented me in this as well as many other of my Affairs.

It gives me much Satisfaction to find, that you approve of the Solutions I sent, in regard to the Difficulties you proposed, and that you are convinced I have done all that was necessary to put the Impaffability thro' those Seas to the Westward out of Question; in such manner as to render any Attempt needless for the future: but on the contrary, I should

should  
dition  
your F  
I ha  
laying  
the Co  
which  
you in  
from f  
Obstru  
their T  
on wit  
nion,  
Accou  
enough  
the Fa  
what E  
them a  
every S  
ships as  
who an  
Runne  
tiges.  
they h  
three,  
As  
navig  
they c  
make  
the W  
Summ  
Ou  
in the  
of the  
drown  
twent  
dextr  
be no

should have been infinitely pleased, had our Expedition succeeded according to the Reasonableness of your Expectation.

I have seriously considered your Proposition of laying open the *Hudson's Bay* Trade, and settling the Country higher up, upon those great Rivers which runs into the Bay; and tho' I may agree with you in the great Advantage the Publick would reap from such a Settlement, (could it be made) in the Obstruction it would give to the *French*, both as to their Trade, and the cutting off the Communication with the *Mississippi*, yet I must declare my Opinion, that it is altogether impracticable upon many Accounts; for I can't see where we could find People enough that would be willing, or able to undergo the Fatigue of travelling those frozen Climates, or what Encouragements would be sufficient to make them attempt it, with such dangerous Enemies on every Side; no *Europeans* could undergo such Hardships as those *French* that intercept the *English* Trade, who are inured to it, and are called by us *Wood-Runners* (or *Coueurs de Bois*) for they indure Fatigues just the same as the native *Indians*, with whom they have been mixed and intermarried for two, three, or more Generations.

As to the Rivers you mention, none of them are navigable with any thing but Canoes, so small, that they carry but two Men, and they are forced to make use of Land Carriages near the fourth Part of the Way, by reason of Water-falls during that little Summer they enjoy.

Out of 120 Men and Officers the Company have in the Bay, not five are capable of venturing in one of those Canoes, they are so apt to overturn and drown them. Many of our People have been twenty Years and upwards there; and yet are not dextrous enough to manage a Canoe; so there would be no transporting People that way.

S

Should

Should there happen a *French* War, the best Step we could take towards rooting them out of *America*, would be, in the first Place, to take *Canada*; which I make no Question might be done, if attempted in a proper Manner, and at a right Season of the Year.

Had Sir *Hovenden Walker* succeeded when he was sent upon that Expedition, it would undoubtedly have been of great Advantage to us; for at that Time the *French* were not one Tenth Part so numerous as now, that they have intermarried with the Natives, and over-run the whole Country, so that it is become a Matter of infinite Difficulty to root them quite out of their Possessions and Trade in *America*.

I look upon Sir *Hovenden Walker's* Miscarriage in his Expedition, to be owing to this; that he did not arrive there 'till the latter End of *August*, at which Time he ought to have been returning: and whenever a War happens again with *France*, should it be thought proper to attempt the taking of *Canada*, we ought to be in the River of *St. Lawrence* by the first Day of *June* at the farthest; and as to the Difficulties Sir *Hovenden* complained of, from the Uncertainty of the Currents, Fogs, &c. they are such as we now make no account of conquering in *Hudson's Bay* and Straits, where they are certainly greater. I can set the Currents and Tides in any Weather, even under a Mainfail in a Storm of Wind, so as to discover both how fast, and upon what Point of the Compass it sets; and then as to observing the Latitude in foggy Seasons, I have seldom mis'd two Days together, if it be tolerable smooth Water, as you'll find in our Journals. Now I apprehend that the Navigation in the River *St. Lawrence* must be attended with much fewer Inconveniencies, than in *Hudson's Straits*, and those Coasts where

where  
with f

The  
presen  
shoul  
ther  
mater  
Chart  
be eng  
my Jo  
count  
me.

I a  
Wish  
me, a  
Lord  
great  
know  
more,  
their

SIR  
Janua

To A.

DE

IN  
I L  
Schen  
I refer  
discov  
have  
of the  
and t

where we have no Soundings, much Ice, great Fogs, with strong Tides, and various Currents.

This is the principal Matter that I can think of at present; had not my Indisposition prevented me, I should, before this Time, have drawn up some further Account of our Voyage, but I have nothing material worth imparting to you further, except a Chart of the whole Bay and the Straits, which will be engraved in a little Time, for you already have my Journals and Observations, as well as the Accounts of those that attempted the Discovery before me.

I am very much obliged to you for your kind Wishes, and all the Favours you have conferred on me, and am as yet quite uncertain as to what their Lordships intend to do for me; they treat me with great Respect, and such as I have the Honour to know, to wit, my Lord *Winchelsea*, Lord *Baltimore*, and Admiral *Cavendish*, have all promised me their Favours. I am,

SIR, *Your most obedient*  
*humble Servant,*

January 174 $\frac{2}{3}$ .

CHRISTOPHER MIDDLETON.

To A. D——, Esq;

XVII.

DEAR SIR, *Lisburn, January 22, 174 $\frac{2}{3}$ .*

IN my last to *Samuel Smith*, I inclosed one for Lord *Carteret*, open for your Perusal, upon our Scheme of opening a Trade to the Bay, to which I refer you; and in *Sam's* Letter hinted at what I discovered from your Journal at large; that you have made a much greater Progress in the Discovery of the Passage, than you imagined when there; and that from the Lights I have got from your  
S 2 Journal,



Journal, I can almost prove that you were in the Passage, and that *Wager River* is properly *Wager Strait*, and not a fresh Water River; and that the Way you enter'd it was one, tho' not the greatest and easiest way into the Strait: I only want your Chart of the whole new discovered Coast, to establish or contradict my Judgment of it, which I am informed is come to *Dublin*, but not yet sent to me. However, I can't delay imparting my present Thoughts of it, and my Reasons from your Journal, to shew you were in the Strait, but not in a fresh River; and that the chief Cause of your taking it for a River was from the quantity of Ice, the straitness of the Tide, and its following you from the Eastward, and not meeting the Flood from the Westward, which was one of the greatest Proofs we went upon, before you left us. Now this last Objection is easily answered; that had the Ocean flowed in near *Whalebone Point*, as we at first expected, we must then have expected to have thereabouts met the Tide of Flood from the Westward; but since we find the Communication is by a Strait, or Passages thro' Islands, and broken Lands, as in the *Megellanick Straits*; there the Tide continues to rise, until it meets the Tide from the other Ocean, and the Flood is not to be expected to meet us until we have at least got thro' half the Length of the Strait; and if you will look into *Narborough's* Account of the *Megellanick Straits*, you will find that a parallel Instance. Those Straits are no where above four Leagues wide, in most places not above two Leagues, and in the narrow, at the East Entrance, not above a League wide; and yet he went about fifty Leagues into the Straits, before he met the Western Tide. Now you have full stronger Reasons for *Wager's* River being a Strait; it was but six or seven Miles wide at the Entrance on the East Side, and but from 16 to 44 Fathom deep;



you were in the  
 properly *Wager*  
 r; and that the  
 not the greatest  
 only want your  
 Coast, to esta-  
 f it, which I am  
 t yet sent to me,  
 ng my present  
 from your Jour-  
 t, but not in a  
 se of your taking  
 tity of Ice; the  
 owing you from  
 Flood from the  
 greatest Proofs  
 Now this last  
 had the Ocean  
 we at first ex-  
 d to have there-  
 the Westward;  
 n is by a Strait,  
 n Lands, as in  
 ide continues to  
 he other Ocean,  
 to meet us un-  
 e Length of the  
*Narborough's* Ac-  
 ou will find that  
 re no where a-  
 places not above  
 at the East En-  
 and yet he went  
 before he met  
 ve full stronger  
 Strait; it was  
 Entrance on the  
 Fathom deep;

as

as you went up, it increased to four, five, six, and  
 seven Leagues wide; *Deer Sound*, seven Miles wide,  
 goes off from it, and probably others not mentioned  
 in the Journal; since the Lieutenant, when he was  
 last up 12 Leagues above it, says, he tried every  
 other Inlet, to try if he could meet a contrary Tide,  
 or other Passage out, and the Depth increased to 70  
 and 80 Fathoms; your mentioning also the Height  
 and Cragginess of the Coast, and not mentioning  
 their being covered with Snow, tho' you mention  
 that Brook *Cobbam* was, makes me conclude that  
 they were not covered with Snow; and there being  
 neither Trees nor Grass still confirms me, that the  
 whole was a Strait of salt Water, and that you were  
 not come into fresh Water; but the Number of  
 Whales and Fish, seen as high as he went, and  
 none being seen below, nor where the Ships lay, in  
*Savage Cove* and Sound, is a Demonstration to me,  
 not only that it was salt Water, but also that they  
 came in from the westward, and that you would have  
 found less Ice the higher you went; because the  
 Whales could not come there, without a Passage  
 tolerably free from Ice, otherwise they would have  
 come as far as where your Ships lay, but did not  
 because of the Ice; and that must be the Reason  
 why you did not see them, when you went up to  
*Deer Sound*, because the Ice was not then broke up  
 where you were, as it was afterwards when the  
 Lieutenant went up, and probably was much sooner  
 up to the westward; from the Whales also, which  
 you saw in the Bay or Inlet between  $63^{\circ}$  and  $64^{\circ}$ ,  
 and those seen by *Fox* in the same Place, and by  
*Scroggs* in  $64^{\circ} 8'$ , and towards *Whalebone-Point*,  
 where they had no Ice, tho' you met a great deal  
 there; I conclude, there has been more Ice thrown  
 in there this Year, than usually is; and that all that  
 Coast is a broken Coast with Islands, and Inlets, as  
*Cape Fullerton* was, as mentioned by *Scroggs*; and

1

confe-

consequently conclude, that the Whales came into that Corner of the Bay, from the Upper End of that Strait you were in; and that you happened into the most northerly and narrow Entrance, into that Strait, and consequently most pester'd with Ice, and that the most easy and largest Inlet is to the southward of *Whalebone-Point*, betwixt that and the Head Land near *Brook Cobham* in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ .

My Reasoning upon your Journal I would have you consider of; for I really think you have prov'd the Passage, tho' you were not at once able to perfect it ——— what is only necessary to fix or alter my Judgment, would be an Account of the Lieutenant's and Master's Observations, the last time they went up the Strait; what Depths they had upon sounding, what Breadth the Channel continued, which Way it was directed, what Sounds went off from it on either Side; a great deal depends upon their Recollection of these things, as well as whether they met with more or less Ice, whether Snow upon the Land or not, for as to the Tides following them in a Strait it is no Objection.

If their Accounts confirm the others I have taken from the Journal, I think I may congratulate you upon your having found the so-much-wish'd-for Passage; and if it be one, am convinc'd the more southerly Entrance, thro' which the Whales come into the Bay, will be free from Ice. ——— I beg to have your Sentiment upon this, as soon as you can consider it, and have an Answer from your Officers, for the Presumption will be a great Inducement to open the Trade to the Bay; and in a further Discovery, there needs no Wintering in the Bay, only getting there in the Middle of *July*, and pushing as far in the Strait as can be done in the Month of *August*, and then returning in *September* home, which is better than wintering at *Churchill*, until the Passage

sage through leads them to a warmer Climate on the other Side.

I shall add no more, but that I am with great Esteem,

DEAR SIR,

*Your most obedient humble Servant,*

A— D—.

*Your Answer and Lord Carteret's, will determine my going over next Month.*

XVIII.

SIR,

**Y**OURS I receiv'd of 22 *January*. And I also saw yours to Mr. *Smith*, with the inclos'd to my Lord *Carteret*, upon opening the Trade to the Bay.

You say, I have made a much greater Progress in the Discovery of the Passage, than I imagined when there; and that from the Light you have got from my Journal, you can almost prove that I was in the Passage; and that *Wager* River is properly *Wager* Strait, and not a fresh Water River; and that the Way I enter'd it was one, tho' not the greatest and easiest Way into the Strait.

You also observe, if there be a Communication between the Bay and the Western *American* Ocean, or a Passage thro' Islands and broken Land, as in the *Magellanick* Straits, the Tide will continue to rise until we have got Half-way thro', and then meet the Ocean Tide. This I thought of when there, and made several Trials of, and also ordered my Officers to observe the Course, Direction and Height of the Tides at the farthest they went up, as you will find in the inclos'd Order. Now, as it

flowed

flowed at *Savages Sound* 15 Feet, the same Day and Tide that it flow'd but 10 Feet at *Deer Sound*, and 15 Leagues above *Deer Sound* on the west Side but 6 Feet, the Tides kept their regular Course as high up as I was myself, which was 5 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, that is about seven Hours Ebb, and five Hours Flood, 20 Leagues up; whereas if there had been a Tide from the westward to have met this, it must have raised the Tide higher the further we went up, as you say it does by *Narborough's* Account of the fore-mention'd Straits, and the Flood would have run not above two Hours, as he found it there. All these Observations confirmed me, that it could not be a Strait as you seem to think.

You speak of many Whales that we saw on the Coasts, and in *Wager River*, some of which certainly came in at where our Ships entered; for I saw several in the *Welcome*, and some off *Cape Dobbs*, after we came out, and before we went in. The high Land and deep Water gave me great Hopes, before I tried the above-mentioned Tides. *Brook Cobham* was covered with Snow when we went out; but in our Return home, there was none upon it; the Snow on the Land in the River *Wager*, was much wasted before we got out of it upon the Tops of the Mountains, but in the Vallies it lay very thick, and hard enough to bear Waggon and Horses.

As to any Passage or broken Lands between River *Wager* and  $62^{\circ} 40'$ , I am certain I searched that Coast very narrowly all the Way, and stood into every Bay so near, that the *Indians* I had on board knew all the Coast, and would have had me set them on Shore at *Cape Fullerton*; for they knew the Way to *Churchill*, and had travelled that Way several times in the Summer; which they could not have done if that Cape were an Island, or any large River there, for they have no Canoes, neither is there

there any Wood there to raft over with, as to the Southward.

The Copy of the Lieutenant and Master's Report, I have here inclosed; but what is wanting there, I shall mention here: the River, 5 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, is 8 or 9 Leagues broad; the Channel is 70 or 80 Fathoms deep in the Middle, and lieth near N. W. by true Chart; as far as they went up, they met with as much Ice or more than below, where the Ships lay; when I was up, I could go no farther for Ice than I did, and could not get over to the west Shore but once for Ice all the Time we were in the River; so my real Opinion is, that this River cannot be above one Week or two at most, clear of Ice in a Year, and many Years not clear at all.

For the Reasons I mention in my Observations on the Effects of Cold, when the Winds blow from the N. W. Quarter, there must certainly be much Land to the westward, covered with perpetual Snow, and the Land from the Water's Side ascends gradually up into the Country, and is very high, as I saw from off the high Land above *Deer Sound*. This is all I have time to think upon at present. I am,

*With great Respect,*

*Your most obedient humble Servant,*

CHRISTOPHER MIDDLETON.

*H. B.* This is a rough Draught, and to all Purposes the same as a Letter I sent Mr. *D*—— in Answer to his of *Jan.* 22d, 1743; but I can't venture to say, it is the same Word for Word.



## XIX.

*Extract of a Letter of Mr. D——*

----- I heartily wish you Health and a prosperous Voyage ----- I recommend my Friend, Mr. *Smith*, to your Care and Protection, hoping he will behave well, and be diligent in what you employ him ----- I hope we shall have a happy Meeting, and am with great Truth and Esteem, &c.

*Suffolk-street,*  
May 27, 1741.

A—— D——

## XX.

**R**OBERT WILSON, late Master of the *Furnace* Sloop, Capt. *Christopher Middleton* Commander, maketh Oath, that he, this Deponent, being soon after last *Easter*, 1743, on board the *Mary Belinda*, in the River of *Tbames*, *Edward Thompson*, late Surgeon of the *Furnace* aforesaid, and *John Wygate*, late Clerk of the same, did then and there make a Visit to him this Deponent, and did both openly and in the hearing of great Part of the said *Mary's* Crew declare, that he this Deponent was the only Man they wanted to compleat a certain Purpose; which, if he this Deponent would join with them in, he this Deponent might depend upon having the same Post as Capt. *Middleton* had the last Voyage, or Words to this Purpose, and that upon this Deponent's asking them what they meant, they told him he must go along with them directly to Mr. D——, for that they said Mr. D—— wanted much to talk with him; that accordingly he this Deponent did accompany them to the said Mr. D——, and that the said Mr. D—— did importune this Deponent to set down some Particulars in Writing relating to the late Voyage under



Capt. *Middleton*: To which this Deponent answer'd, That he could give no other Account than what he had already given in his Journal, which was a just and true one; and that upon this, he this Deponent left Mr. D——, and returned back to his Business. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that about two Days after, the aforesaid *Thompson* and *Wygate* did make this Deponent a second Visit aboard the *Mary* aforesaid, and that the said *Wygate*, taking a Pen and Ink, did much importune this Deponent, to let him, said *Wygate*, write down an Answer to a certain Question, or Questions, proposed to this Deponent by said *Wygate*; and that said *Wygate* having begun to write, this Deponent suspecting that some wicked Purpose might be designed by such odd Proceedings, did refuse to go on in his Answers, and that then said *Thompson* said, That he thought this Deponent much in the right to desist. till he was better assured upon what Consideration he was to do it. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that said *Thompson* and *Wygate* did come to him this Deponent, and at a House near the *New Crane*, told this Deponent, that they had been every where seeking him this Deponent, and that this Deponent answer'd, He did not approve of their Schemes, and that they should carry him no more to Mr. D——. That upon this, said *Thompson* did rave, and swore, That then he this Deponent should be ruined as well as Captain *Middleton*. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that about two Days after this third Visit, he this Deponent meeting the aforesaid *Wygate*, was by him said *Wygate* assured, that said Mr. D—— having been by him said *Wygate* inform'd of what he this Deponent had said to them, said, Mr. D—— turned about and said, Ah! is the Master gone over to the other Side? And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that at all times that he has been in

alth and a pro-  
nd my Friend,  
on, hoping he  
what you em-  
have a happy  
and Esteem,

A—— D——

Master of the  
*Opber Middleton*  
this Deponent,  
board the *Mary*  
*ward Thompson*,  
, and *John Wy-*  
then and there  
, and did both  
Part of the said  
Deponent was  
npleat a certain  
ent would join  
ht depend upon  
*Middleton* had the  
rpose, and that  
hat they meant,  
h them directly  
l Mr. D——  
hat accordingly  
hem to the said  
r. D—— did  
n some Particu-  
e Voyage under  
Capt.

Company with said *Thompson* and *Wygate*, they have expressed themselves in very malicious and spiteful Words concerning Capt. *Middleton*, and have abus'd him with vile and most unjust Accusations and unbecoming Language.

ROBERT WILSON.

Middlesex. Sworn before me the  
11th of June 1743. J. Poulson.

XXI.

*Middlesex.*

**J**OHAN MACK BEATH, this Deponent, maketh Oath, that he this Deponent was employed five Years as a Mariner on board one of the Sloops belonging to the *Hudson's-Bay* Company at *Churchill* River in *Hudson's-Bay*; and that he this Deponent had frequent Opportunities of observing the Tides thereabouts, and that he did always take notice that in the said Bay, and especially near *Churchill*, a north-east Wind, when it blew any thing of a Gale, did make the highest Tides; and that, on the contrary, the least Tides were when it blowed from the south-west, and that the Difference did sometimes amount to 9, 10, or 12 Feet. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that *John Wygate*, late Clerk of his Majesty's Sloop *Furnace*, and *Edward Thompson*, late Surgeon of the same, have within these three Months last past been frequently at this Deponent's House at *Wapping*, and have often there by this Deponent been heard to boast, that they would do Capt. *Middleton's* Business, and that they would get him broke, and that they would take care that said Capt. *Middleton* should never command another of the King's Ships, with many other the like ill-natur'd Expressions. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that said *Wygate* hath frequently said in this Deponent's hearing, that he said *Wygate* might be made a Purser of one of his

Ma-

Majesty's Ships whenever he pleased, and that he shewed several Letters, which he affirm'd to have received from one Mr. A—— D——, in *Ireland*; and that said *Wygate* also affirmed, that said Mr. D—— had, in said Letters, promised him said *Wygate* to reward him to his Heart's Content, provided he said *Wygate* would draw up and sign something of the Nature of an Accusation against the said Capt. *Middleton*, on Account of his Conduct in his late Voyage to the Northwest, and that said Mr. D—— had been at his said *Wygate's* House, since his Arrival in *England*. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that he this Deponent had been credibly informed, that the said *Wygate* hath frequently uttered the like Speeches, and made the like Boasts in several other Places.

JOHN MACBEATH.

*Sworn before me at my House in  
Great Kirby-street, Hatton-  
garden, the 13th Day of June  
1743. J. Poulson.*

XXII.

THOMAS TOWNS, this Deponent, late Boat-swain of the *Discovery* Pink, maketh Oath, that he this Deponent being the 20th of *July*, 1742, on board the said *Discovery* in *Wager* River, at a Place called *Deer Sound*, Captain *Middleton* Commander of the *Furnace* Sloop, and Captain *Moor* Commander of the *Discovery* aforesaid, being then just come back with the Boat from a Place called *Savage Sound*, together with four of the *Discovery's* Men which they took along with them, the said Captains, and the said four Men, did, in this Deponent's hearing, declare, that they had all tasted of the Water in the Mid-channel of the said River four Leagues above *Deer Sound*, and found it to be but barely brackish, and that the said four Men did freely

freely drink it for want of Beer, rather than suck the Ice. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that when the Boat returned from going up the River the last time, which was on *August* the first, the Year aforesaid, Capt. *Moor*, Mr. *Wilson*, Master of the *Furnace*, and the Petty Officers that accompanied them, did all give it as their unanimous Opinion, that there could be no Passage out of the River *Wager* northward or westward, because, as they said, the Freshness of the Water increas'd the higher they went, and also because the Tide flowed but six Feet at the highest they went, and also because they met with a Fall of Water, which would not suffer them to go higher, and forced the Boat to a Grapnell. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that on the fourth of *August* 1742, about 6 in the Morning, he this Deponent saw three Whales spouting Water in Sir *Thomas Roe's Welcome*, just without the Mouth of *Wager* River. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that he is certain, from his own Knowledge, that all the Way from the *Frozen Straits*, so named by Capt. *Middleton* when he discovered it, to *Wager* River, the Tide of Flood came from the eastward. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that Captain *Middleton's* Behaviour, as far as this Deponent ever saw or heard, was very kind and mild, and that he never did threaten Punishment to any Man for offering his Mind with freedom about the Conduct used in the intended Discovery, or say he would break open Chests, and take away Journals or Papers. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that he really believes the said Captain *Middleton* had the Discovery at heart above all things; for that he seemed overjoy'd at every thing that seem'd to promise it, and kept a constant Look out and Examination of all Shores; keeping sometimes eight and forty Hours upon Deck at a time, which must  
be

be very fatiguing in those Parts to a Man in his bad State of Health. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that through the Sickness and Lameness of a great many, and the Unskilfulness of some, the Ships would not in all probability have ever reach'd *England* again, if it had pleas'd God to take away *Capt. Middleton* before they had pass'd *Hudson's* Straits homewards. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that the two northern *Indians* were so far from being forced into a leaky Boat against their Wills, that they went voluntarily into a good tight Boat, which this Deponent saw well caulk'd, and put in Order but two Days before, and seem'd highly pleas'd at their Departure, as well they might; for they had more Arms, Ammunition, and Goods given them, than they could have traded in seven Years.

THOMAS TOWNS.

Middlesex. Sworn the 30th Day of  
May, 1743, before me Anthony  
Wroth.

XXIII.

ULRICH VON SOBRIEK, late Quarter-Master of the *Discovery* Pink, maketh Oath, that on *Monday* the 19th Day of *July*, 1742, being up the River *Wager* three or four Leagues above *Deer Sound*, in the Boat with *Capt. Middleton* Commander of the *Furnace* Sloop, he this Deponent, and the rest of the Hands in the Boat, did drink the Water in the Mid-channel, and found it but just brackish, so that it might very well be drank. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that the Flood Tide which flows up the River *Wager*, in at its Mouth, comes all from the east, or the east by north, the Course of the New Strait by Compass, and from the *Frozen Strait* round *Cape Frigid*, (so named by *Capt. Middleton* the Discoverer, where he



he went with the Boat on Shore, as he this Deponent, being in the Ship, could very well observe and discern, the Ship being halled in upon the Ebb, and set off from the said Strait upon the Flood, whilst she was driving and working to stay for the Captain's coming off with the Boat) and not from the south-westward, as is wrongly reported by some who know nothing of the matter. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that all the way between *Brook Cobham* and *Cape Dobbs*, that is, between 63 and 65 Degrees of Latitude, they were sure of the main Land, and were never above three or four Leagues off the main Land, except in one or two Places, where, meeting with shoal Water, they lay'd to in the Night-time, that they might not pass any Place unseen, and stood in shore in the Day; that off the Head-land in Latitude 63<sup>o</sup> 20', they were not two Leagues from the Shore, and saw there four or five small Whales, but none at *Brook Cobham*. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that he never heard of any Rumours about any Neglect of the Discovery, on board either of the Ships, but that quite to the contrary, Captain *Middleton's* Treatment was very kind, both to Officers and Men; and that no body could take more Pains and Care in making all kinds of Observations, which might help towards a Discovery, than the Captain, and also in instructing others who were ignorant to do the like. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that out of above twenty Men, which they had on board the *Discovery* from *Churchill* home, there were not above four or five in a Watch able to go aloft to hand or reef a Sail, including Officers, tho' this Ship was much better mann'd than the *Furnace*; insomuch, that in *Wager* River they were obliged to send most of their Hands to assist aboard the *Furnace*, where they had few besides sick Men. And this Deponent further maketh



maketh Oath, that on the 4th of *August*, 1742, in the Morning, he this Deponent did see without the Mouth of the River *Wager*, two or three Whales of the Whalebone Kind.

ULRICH VON SOBRIEK.

Middlesex. Sworn 2d June 1743,  
before me, Anth. Wroth.

XXIV.

GRANCE GRANT, this Deponent, late of the Carpenter's Crew on board the *Discovery* Pink, maketh Oath, that he this Deponent being, *July* the 20th, 1742, on board the said *Discovery* in *Savage Sound* in *Wager* River, when Capt. *Middleton*, of the *Furnace* Sloop, and Capt. *Moor*, of the *Discovery*, return'd in the Boat, with four of the *Discovery's* Men, from above *Savage Sound*, he this Deponent heard the said Captains and all the said four Men assert, that they had tasted of the Water in the Mid-channel of *Wager* River, three or four Leagues above *Deer Sound*, and found it to be fresh, or but just brackish; and that the said Men, for want of Beer in the Boat, chose to drink it rather than suck the Ice, as they us'd to do elsewhere. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that on the first Day of *August*, the Year aforesaid, being the last time the Boat returned from going up *Wager* River, he this Deponent heard Capt. *Moor*, Mr. *Wilson* the Master, and Petty Officers, all declare and agree, that surely there was no Passage westward out of *Wager* River for several Reasons; particularly from the Increase of the Freshness of the Water in going up, from the Tides flowing but six Feet at the highest they went, and from the great Water-falls which hindered them from getting higher. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that on the fourth Day of *August*, the Year aforesaid,

U

said, in the Morning, being then out of *Wager* River, and coming into *Sir Thomas Roe's Welcome*, he saw three or four black Whales, blowing or spouting Water. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that as to the Discovery intended, Capt. *Middleton* seem'd to give the utmost Proof of his hearty Desire to effect it; and, tho' in a bad State of Health, kept the Deck more than any Person on board, sometimes eight and forty Hours together, and frequently went aloft; that he was careful above all things to search all Shores, and chose to lie by in the Night, rather than pass any Straits or Inlets that might afford a Passage. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that he never heard that the Captain threatned to punish any one for speaking his Mind about the Discovery; but, on the contrary, he was always courteous in his Behaviour to his Officers, and kind to all, sometimes when they did not deserve it. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that both Ships were so ill-officer'd and mann'd, and in so bad Health, that he verily believes that, next under God, all their Lives are owing to the said Captain's Vigilance and Conduct; and that if he had died, they should scarce have ever seen *England* again. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that before now he never heard or understood, that the two northern *Indians* desired to come to *England*; but, on the contrary, that they departed in a good tight Boat, highly pleased with the large Stock of Presents, Ammunition, and Arms they had received from the Captain. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that he was employed by Capt. *Moor* of the *Discovery*, in making one Copy of the said Capt. *Moor's* Journal, and in finishing another.

GRANCE GRANT.

Middlesex. Sworn before me one of his Majesty's Justices of the Peace for the County of Middlesex, 27 May, 1743. J. Poulson. XXV.

## XXV.

**T**HOMAS COOPER, this Deponent, late Mariner on board the *Furnace* Sloop, commanded by Capt. *Middleton*, maketh Oath, that he never heard or was informed of any high or harsh Words, that passed between the said Capt. *Middleton* and any of his Officers; or that the said Captain did any wise threaten to punish any Man for speaking his Mind freely about the Discovery; or that he threatned to break open any one's Chest to come at Papers or Journals; but that on the contrary, his Carriage was at all times mild to every body; and that by the said Captain's encouraging every one under any Hardships or Difficulties, he this Deponent did, and now does sincerely believe, that he earnestly endeavoured and desired to make and complete the Discovery. And this Deponent further maketh Oath, that altho' one of the northern *Indians* seemed at first more inclinable to stay than to go home, yet that when they saw what Presents and Arms the Captain had ordered to be delivered them, they both seemed highly pleased, and willing to depart; and both went voluntarily into the Boat, which was a good tight one, without the least Forcing or Compulsion.

THOMAS COOPER.

Middlesex. Sworn the 2d Day of June,  
1743, before me, Ant. Wroth.

## XXVI.

**J**OHAN DEWILDE, Clock-Maker, this Deponent, maketh Oath, that on *Thursday* the 19th of *May*, this present Year 1743, he this Deponent being in Conversation with *John Wygate*, late Clerk to Capt *Christopher Middleton* on board the *Furnace* Sloop, said *Wygate* did voluntarily declare, that he

U 2

said

out of *Wager*  
*Roe's Welcome*,  
blowing or  
further mak-  
tended, Capt.  
Proof of his  
in a bad State  
any Person on  
ours together,  
as careful above  
chose to lie by  
straits or Inlets  
this Deponent  
heard that the  
me for speaking  
on the contrary,  
our to his Of-  
when they did  
further maketh  
ll-officer'd and  
at he verily be-  
r Lives are ow-  
and Conduct;  
uld scarce have  
Deponent fur-  
he never heard  
*Indians* desired  
trary, that they  
ly pleased with  
tion, and Arms  
in. And this  
at he was em-  
ery, in making  
ournal, and in  
ANCE GRANT.  
is Majesty's Ju-  
Middlesex, 27  
XXV.

said *Wygate*, together with *Edward Thompson*, late Surgeon of the said *Furnace Sloop*, as also with *John Rankin*, late Lieutenant of the same, being on a certain Day of a certain Month, which this Deponent cannot at this time recollect, in the present Year 1743, by the Appointment of one Mr. D—, at the Office of Admiralty, said Mr. D— coming to them out of the Room where the Lords Commissioners were then sitting, and addressing himself to the aforesaid *Rankin*, said, Well, Mr. *Rankin*, I have engaged to their Lordships, that you shall be no more concerned in Liquor when on Duty, and you may rely upon the Command of a twenty Gun Ship through my Interest, or Words to that effect; and that Mr. D— addressing himself next to *Edward Thompson* aforesaid, said, You are a very good Surgeon, Mr. *Thompson*, and I will recommend you as one every way qualified to be a Surgeon in some of his Majesty's Hospitals, or Words to this effect; and that said Mr. D— seeming to take little or no Notice of himself the said *Wygate*, he said *Wygate* spoke to said Mr. D— to this purpose: Mr. D—, you seem to have forgotten me; and that said Mr. D— answer'd, Not so, Mr. *Wygate*, there will be two or three Ships sent out again the next Year upon the Discovery, and you shall be Purser of the best of them, or Words to this effect. And furthermore this Deponent maketh Oath, that said *Wygate* said to him this Deponent, at the same time, I know that Capt. *Middleton* counts *Thompson* a Fool, and me a Sot; and by G—d 'tis true enough; or Words to this effect.

JOHN DEWILDE,  
 Sworn at the Guildhall, London, 19th  
 June, 1743, before me Ed. Bellamy.

XXVII.

Mr. D—'s Letter of March 25, 1741, to  
C. Middleton.

DEAR SIR, Suffolk-street.

**T**HE Bearer, Mr. John Lanrick, is the Person who has resolv'd to push his way into the World by going to Sea; he has been bred a Scholar, and has a sober good Character, and proposes making it his Study to become a complete Seaman under your Command; as I have a Value for his Friends, I don't doubt but you will promote his being made a good Sailor: and I dare say, he will do his utmost to obey your Commands in every thing, and upon his behaving well, you will give him your Protection and Assistance. I shall add no more, but that I am, with great Esteem,

DEAR SIR,

Your most obedient humble Servant,

A—D—

XXVIII.

Extracts of two Letters from Mr. John Lanrick to his Father—and by him publish'd in several News Papers, in November 1742.

From on board the Furnace in Churchill River, June 21, 1742.

**T**HE last Place I wrote to you from was the Onkneys. I then express'd my entire Satisfaction in the Choice I had made, though, in some measure, contrary to your Inclination (which indeed is the only thing that concerns me) nor has a longer Trial of the Sea made me as yet repent, or in the least Degree lessen'd my Satisfaction, nor do

I



I see how it should, since I have never met with any thing but Gentlemen's Usage, both from Commander and others. — Here we have undergone a most terrible and severe Winter amidst the Snow and Ice. — It is impossible to give a just Idea of the Severity of the Weather to any Person who has never personally seen or felt its Effects; it freezes to such a degree, that no Man whatsoever is able to face the Weather, with any Part of his Body naked or exposed, but in the shortest Space of time he is frozen in such a manner, that the Part turns whitish and solid like Ice; and when thaw'd, blisters like Scald or Burning. Several of our Men have lost their Toes and Fingers, by being froze; nay the Spirits of Wine or Brandy freeze and turn solid. — The Ice we found seven Feet thick in the Mid-stream of the River. There is no Disease or Distemper prevails here but the Scurvy, by which we have lost ten of the best of our Seamen.

## XXIX.

*Orkneys, Sept. 16, 1742.*

----- The last time I wrote to you was from *Churchill Fort* — The first Day of *July* we set out upon our intended Discovery. The eighth we entered *Sir Thomas Roe's Welcome*, which is about 14 Leagues a-cross. The ninth we fell in with a vast Body of broken Ice, in which we were entangled three Days, being obliged to ply our Warps and Grapnels. The twelfth having got amongst somewhat thinner Ice, we set sail, and stood over for the north Shore. In Latitude  $65^{\circ} 10'$ , we named a high Land *Cape Dobbs*, in honour of Esquire *Dobbs*; observing an Opening to the northward of the Cape, we stood in for it, designing to come to an Anchor to try the Tides; but finding it was the Mouth of a great River, we run about 8 Leagues up it, and at last were oblig'd to come to an Anchor amongst broken



broken Ice, where indeed we rode in the greatest Danger, on account of the great Lodges of Ice which drove against us with the Tide.—The fourth of *August* we left the River, and stood away for the northward, being blessed with fine Weather; we had a full Prospect of the Land on each Side. In the Latitude  $66^{\circ} 30'$ , we saw the Land stretch away to the westward, which gave us great Hopes; but afterwards found it to be nothing but a Bay, Land all round. Then standing away for another Opening on the east Side, we laid the Ship to, and went ashore to take a Survey from the Top of a high Mountain, when we could see the Sea, all fast froze in one solid Body for a Matter of twenty Leagues away to the S. E. and finding at the same time that the Flood Tide came from thence, we were fully confirmed that it had a Communication with the east Sea, and that there was no such thing as a Passage into the western Ocean, as we expected.

The eighth of *August* we bore away to the southward, and made some further Search about Latitude 64. Thus having travers'd all this long Bay, the 15th we took our farewell of it.

Never were Ships worse mann'd; several of our Men are dead in the Country; the one half of the Remainder so taken with the Scurvy, that they have been incapable of doing Duty.

## XXX.

*July 15, 1742.*

THE Soundings up the east Channel between the Islands and the east Side or Islands is 45. 40. 30. 25 Fathoms deep, soft Ground in the Middle of the Channel, and 16 Fathoms to 6 Fathoms, within a Quarter of a Cable to some of the Islands, and good Soundings through in many Channels; between those Islands Depth of Water is 18 Fathoms where I founded, and 7 or 8 Fathoms within half a Cable

Cable of the Islands ; the Channel between the Islands and east Side is 3 or 4 Miles broad ; we got into a Bay or Cove on the east Side, good clean Ground, and Soundings from 30 to 5 Fathoms ; the Tide came from the southward through the Islands, it flowed 13 Feet.

The northmost Islands bore N. b. W. distance 4 or 5 Miles ; the Soundings from the Bay or Cove to the northmost Point of this Side off the Bluff, are 45, 40, 30, 20 Fathom Water, according to the Distance we were off shore ; above the Islands from the east Side to the south-west Side, is 12 or 13 Leagues broad, the Land runs N. W. b. W. the Tide flowed nearest N. W. b. W. along shore ; we run into a Bay or Cove at the north End of the Point this Side of the Bluff ; the Soundings from 20, 15, 12, 10, 8, 6 Fathoms, good clear Ground, and clear of Ice.

The Tide came from the southward, it flowed 13 Feet and a half ; the Straits above the Island 12 or 13 Leagues broad. I went upon the highest Land on the east Side, and set the Land ; there is a Bluff upon the south Side, with three low Islands off it, and a low Point at the Back of it, that bore South-by-east off us, and a low sloping Point that bore South-by-west off ; with that Opening to us, the Land runs from S. b. W. to the N. W. a high mountainous Land ; it runs down with a bluff Point, and a low Point at a small Distance from it, and then runs up to a very high mountainous Land and round to the bluff Point.

There is an Opening seemingly to me from the high Land, or Bluff I was upon, it being about a Quarter Flood or more, by the Tide that came through the Straits ; I saw the Ice break up and set round the Point I stood upon, with some force, that all the Ice was presently in motion, in the Middle of the Channel against the Flood, and was most clear

clear of Ice in the Middle this Morning; it is 9 or 10 Leagues broad.

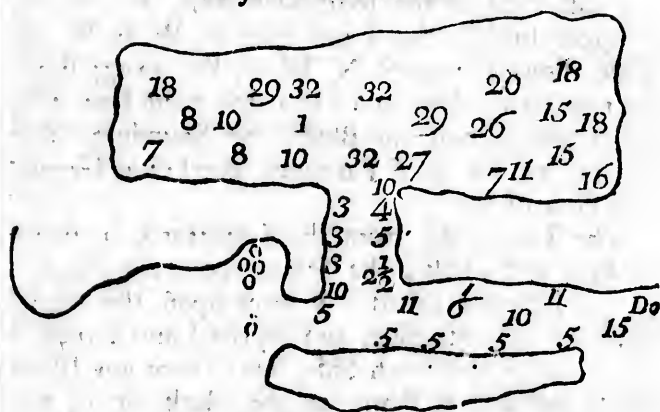
July 16, 1742.

JOHN RANKIN.

XXXI.

THIS is the Cove upon Brook Cobham, or Marble Island; it was almost dark, my Men were taking the Skin off the Bear they had killed in the Water.

*These are all Fathoms.*



*This lyeth off the Mouth of the Cove.*

This Tide came in suddenly from the W. N. W. round the N. W. End of the Island upon us, and flowed so fast that we had almost lost the Bear: we were forced to throw it into the Boat, my Men up to their Middle in Water, by the sudden flowing of the Tide, as all the Men can prove.

I am very certain, that there is a great Probability of a Passage, or Straits, leading to some western Ocean, from the above Reason; for I did perceive an Opening to the westward of Marble Island, and desir'd I might go there; but he told me, it did not signify much to go thither, but if I had a Mind

to go to *Marble* Island for Water I might ; so I did not come nigh the Opening I perceived to the westward ; it was almost calm all the Day we lay there.

*August* 12, 1742.

JOHN RANKIN.

XXXII.

*Middleton.*

ONE would be apt to think, that the Lieutenant's Paper, on the foregoing Page, related to some Cove of no small Consequence, by the Pains he has been at in taking the Draught and Soundings of it. Yet when I ask'd him, what Use he propos'd to make of it? He answer'd, That the Bottom was full of Pebble-stones, and it would be an excellent Place for Ships to come from *England* and load with them. Hence may be conjectur'd what a high Opinion he entertained, at that Time, about a Passage there.

This Account is exactly of a Piece with all his other Papers and Reports during this Voyage, dark and unintelligible. There is hardly any guessing what he would be at. If he means that the Flood Tide came round the west End of the Island, the Reason thereof may be very easily assigned: For this Island lying directly in the Tide's way, and but two or three Leagues from the Main, the Tide must come round both its Ends: And there being a Bay formed between the Headland in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , and another Headland almost against the west End of the Island, which rounds away to the eastward of the south, the Tide thereby receives that Sett; and this is what deceived him, and made him believe it came out of some Inlet on the western Shore. Here he unjustly accuses me of hindering him from examining an Opening; and in his Answer to *Query* 20, says, I can't say that the Captain discourag'd

courag'd or discountenanc'd me in making any Discovery.

## XXXIII.

DEAR SIR,

I Received yours the Last Night which did not a little surprize me that My Lord *Winchelsea* suspected that I was Drunk when I took my Leave of him. I do assure you I had Drink no no More then the Share of one bottle of fine Eall between three of ws at the Duke of *Portlands*, where I Dinnd and two Glafs of wine after Dinning, then I went to wat upon my Lord and take my Leave of him and to give the Duke of *Portlands* Service to him.

I am Dear S<sup>r</sup> Infinitely obliged to you for the great honour you have been pleased to Do Me, in giving me a good Carrectir to my Lord, and S<sup>r</sup> *Jacob Ackworth*, I shall for Ever Think My Self bound to pray for your good Health, and Prosperity, If ever it should be in my pour to serve you by Night or Day, I shall allways Think my Self in Duty bound to Do it.

Dear S<sup>r</sup> I beg the favour of you not to Think I Ever shall be seen In Liquer in this Ship; for som of my Friend at the Navy office told me to be Warr for Some Complants had been Made against my Capt, but D<sup>r</sup> S<sup>r</sup> I have a Soul farr above taking any Nottice of any Thing but to speack all the good of my Commander I Cann, he his Don Very well by me as to the time I have been with him, but I never Exceed two or three Glafs of Wine at a time nor shall while I am with him, S<sup>r</sup> *Jacob Ackworth* Sent his Service to Me by a friend that is going passenger with ws to *Port Mabon* becaws he was afraid to writt, for fear it should fall in wrong hands, and said he had heard a Very good Carricter of me for Many Years, and all the Service he Could Do me he would Sr my Wiff gives her hum-

( 156 )

ble Service to you and will wait upon you as soon as She cometh to Town.

*I am Dear S<sup>r</sup> Your Most*

*Humble Serv<sup>t</sup>.*

Long Reach from on  
board the Portsmouth  
Feb<sup>r</sup>. 12—1742.

J<sup>n</sup><sup>o</sup>. Rankin.

---

## Q U E R I E S

To be Answered by

*John Rankin, Lieutenant, Robert Wilson, Master, Edward Thompson, Surgeon, and John Wygate, Clerk, lately under the Command of CHRISTOPHER MIDDLETON, Commander of His Majesty's Sloop the Furnace.*

### Q U E R Y I.

**W***Hether the last time the Lieutenant and Master went up Wager River, there was any Ice to interrupt their Passage in the Boat, from the time they left the Headland above Deer Sound, until they arrived at the high Bluff on the west Side of the Channel; and whether the Water was not salt, and above sixty-eight Fathom deep, the whole Way over, and the Strait from eight to ten Leagues wide; and whether the Channel Course, after they came up with that Bluff, did not bear west-south-west?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

There was no Ice to interrupt our Passage, from the time we left the Headland above Deer Sound, till we came to the utmost Part of our Voyage up the River on the west Side of the Channel; the Water I think was salt; but as I would not entirely depend



depend upon my own Judgment, I filled three Bottles with Water at three different Places, and brought them on board at my Return, and was told there was no Distinction, for they were all equally alike salt. I could find no Ground with a Line of 68 Fathom; I steered W. N. W. by the Compass along the west Shore, a fair open Straits or Channel, eight or ten Leagues wide.

*Master's Answer.*

The last time we went up *Wager* River, we had not much to hinder the Boat's Passage. Above *Deer* Sound the Water was much fresher, and the higher up the fresher still; the River was eight, ten, or more Leagues broad in the broadest Part; the Water 68 or 70 Fathoms towards the Middle.

The Course we steer'd in the Boat after we came up with the bluff Land, was N. N. W. but the Course of both Shores, by Compass from 4 Leagues below, where the Ships lay at *Savage* Sound, to the highest we went up with the Boat, is N. 51° west; the Variation being north 35° west, makes the true Course of the Channel north 50 Degrees westerly.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

I have nothing to say to this Article; it chiefly concerning the Lieutenant and Master, having never been higher up the River *Wager* than *Deer* Sound.

*Clerk's Answer.*

This I beg leave to refer to the Lieutenant and Master.

## Q U E R Y II.

*Whether, when they went on Shore on that high Land, the Lieutenant did not see a great Opening; or large Collection of Water over the Islands to northward of them, with broken Lands to the westward, as high as the Lands at the Cape of Good Hope; and whether*

on you as soon

J<sup>n</sup>°. Rankin.

E S

*Wilson, Ma-*  
*on, and John*  
*ne Command*  
TON, Com-  
*the Furnace.*

*tenant and Ma-*  
*here was any Ice*  
*from the time*  
*ound, until they*  
*de of the Chan-*  
*salt, and above*  
*y over, and the*  
*; and whether*  
*with that Bluff,*

Passage, from  
e *Deer* Sound,  
our Voyage up  
Channel; the  
ld not entirely  
depend

ther the Master, who went much higher up upon the Mountains, did not overlook all the Islands in the main Channel, and saw a large Passage or Strait, four or five Leagues wide, beyond them, the Channel-Course bearing directly south-west with high Lands on each Side, all thereabouts appearing to be broken Lands, the whole Channel being free from Ice or any thing to obstruct their going further, whether he did not find the Water salt there, and upon his Return to the Boat was desirous of proceeding further; but the Lieutenant having already exceeded his Orders durst not go any further?

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

Yes, I saw a great Opening, or large Collection of Water, to the northward of the Islands which were in this River, or Straits; and there appeared broken Lands to the westward, as high and mountainous as the *Cape of Good Hope*. The whole Channel was free from Ice. I could not stay any longer to make Observations, having exceeded my limited Time, and knew the Ships were preparing to sail out of the River.

*Master's Answer.*

For an Answer to this Query, I refer to the Report given in to Capt. *Middleton* by the Lieutenant, and myself at our Return. I can make no Comparison between the Height of the Lands in question, and those at the *Cape of Good Hope*, having never been near the Cape.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

This, like the former, appertains to the Lieutenant and Master; but I heard both their Reports, in which they both agreed, as to the Intent and Meaning of this Article.

*Clerk's Answer.*

This Article I desire may be answered by the Lieutenant and Master.

### Q U E R Y III.

*Whether the Captain did not limit them to go only to Deer Sound, or thereabouts, and to come back with the utmost Dispatch, the Nature of the Service would allow of; and whether after their sailing above fifteen Leagues further, and giving him a Return under their Hands, that there was another Passage into the Sea, besides that the Ships went in at, the Captain did not immediately prepare to sail out of the River, without proceeding upon the Discovery, and sailed out of the River to the north-eastward the fourth of August?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

The Captain's Orders, in Writing, were, that I would go to *Deer Sound*, or thereabouts, and to come back with the utmost Dispatch; but I desired he would give me liberty to act as I thought most conducive to the Discovery of a Passage; and he verbally consented that I might run up the River or Strait, as far as I could conveniently do, without retarding the Ships from sailing out of the River, for that he intended to sail in a few Days, and which I found to be true; for the Ships were preparing to sail before I came on board.

*Master's Answer.*

The Order, thro' a Hurry and a Mistake of the Captain's Clerk, as the Captain told him at our putting off the Boat, was to make Observations in and near *Deer Sound*; but he gave the Lieutenant, as I heard afterwards, verbal Orders to proceed as far as he thought proper. At our Return we gave the Captain a Report, signed by the Lieutenant and myself. The Captain did, and had several

times

*Clerk's*

times been endeavouring to get out of the Cove in order to proceed on the Discovery, and sailed out to the eastward on the Discovery to meet the Flood Tides, according to his Instructions, on the fourth of *August*.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

The Lieutenant shewed me the Order the Captain gave him when he went up the River, the Words of which was expressly in the Manner as here set down; and after they had given in their Reports, the Captain prepared for sailing, and accordingly sailed out of the River *Wager* the fourth of *August* 1742.

*Clerk's Answer.*

I very well know that they were limited to go only to *Deer Sound*, or thereabout, and ordered to come back with the utmost Dispatch; and that the Captain said, when the Lieutenant staid longer than his time, that "he did not doubt but the Lieutenant would bring some romantic Story of a Passage that way, but he should give no Attention to it; for he would sail out of the River as soon as he returned," which accordingly he did.

Q U E R Y I V.

*Whether there were not many large black Whales above Deer Sound in that Passage, and whether they saw any Whales below, or at the Entrance, or without Wager River, either in the Strait or Bay above Cape Hope, or in any other Part of the Bay or Straits of Hudson, except on the north-west Side near Brook Cobham; and whether they believed those Whales came in from the east or west End of Wager River or Straits, and whether, in their own Judgment, they did not think that there might be a Passage from thence to the south-westward?*

*The*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

I saw a great Number of black Whales, of the Whalebone kind, in and near *Deer Sound*, and nowhere else, except at *Brook Cobham*. I can't think, that the Whales we saw in *Wager River* came in at the Place our Ships went in at, but rather through the Channels bounded by the broken Lands on the west Side; and it is my Opinion, that there is a Probability of a Passage to the south-westward from *Brook Cobham* from the Rapidity of the Tide there, which I imagine comes from a western Ocean, and fills *Wager River*.

*Master's Answer.*

The Whales we saw about *Deer Sound*, I believe came in at the Mouth of *Wager River*, or some other Inlet from the eastward, to the new *Frigid Strait*, which seems the more probable as being not far from *Baffin's-Bay* and *Davis's Straits*, where the greatest Numbers of Whales are seen; and not less than four hundred *Dutch, Spaniards, &c.* go every Year to take them there; many of which we met in our Voyages in the *Hudson's-Bay* Ships, and they often came on board of us. I cannot think there is any Passage to the other Ocean, because the higher we went we found the Water the fresher, and met with several Water-falls mentioned in our Report. Moreover, at the Mouth of *Wager River*, the Tide rose 16 or 18 Feet; at *Savage Sound* 15 or 16; at *Deer Sound* but 12 or 13; and where we went farthest, but 6 Feet.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

Every one that was as high up the River as *Deer Sound* saw the Whales come in there every Tide. But none was ever seen below at the Entrance, or without *Wager River*, nor in the Straits or Bay above

Y

Cape

The

*Cape Hope*, nor in any other Part of the Bay or Straits of *Hudson*, except on the north-west Side near *Brook Cobham*; and my real Opinion is, that those Whales came in at the west End of *Wager* River, and that there is a great Probability of a Passage from thence to the south-westward.

*Clerk's Answer.*

I never saw any black Whales during our Voyage from *Churchill* River, but at *Deer* Sound and *Brook Cobham*, and imagine those we saw in *Wager* River came through Channels on the west Side of that River. I am likewise of Opinion, that there is a western Ocean nigh *Brook Cobham* and *Wager* River; for that rapid Tide we met with in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , I am almost certain, flows into *Wager* River, and that it comes from a Sea different from that which fills *Hudson's* Strait and Bay.

QUERY V.

*Whether they believe that the Captain would have sent them up at that time, if he had not been alarmed upon bearing that it was rumoured among his Men, that the Discovery was neglected, tho' from the Whales, Depth, and Breadth of the Strait, there were Hopes of a Passage; and whether there were not some high Words upon it, and harsh Words used by the Captain, that he would cane some, and broomstick and lash others, if they reported any thing, or concerned themselves about the Success of the Voyage?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

I imagine that I should never have been sent up *Wager* River again, had it not been for some Murmurs on-board; but I know nothing of the Threatnings Captain *Middleton* is said to have made use of, I not being on board at that time, but was afterwards informed thereof by the Doctor and Clerk.

*Master's*



of the Bay or  
north-west Side  
Opinion is, that  
End of *Wager*  
probability of a  
westward.

ing our Voyage  
ound and Brook  
in *Wager* River  
st Side of that  
that there is a  
and *Wager* Ri-  
with in 63° 20'  
*Wager* River, and  
rom that which

tain would have  
not been alarmed  
ng his Men, that  
rom the *Whales*,  
re were Hopes of  
some high Words  
Captain, that he  
sh others, if they  
selves about the

re been sent up  
for some Mur-  
of the Threat-  
ve made use of,  
but was after-  
r and Clerk.

*Master's*

*Master's Answer.*

I sincerely believe no Man had the Discovery more at heart than Capt. *Middleton*, nor was any one so great a Sufferer as he, both in Person and Purse. As to his Men, they were so unlikely to spread such Rumours, or to desire to encounter any Danger, that on the contrary, when poor scorbutick Creatures heard it was agreed on to return back from the *Frozen* Strait, they were overjoy'd, and ready to leap out of their Skins, as the Saying is. I never heard of the least Threatning during our being at Sea in any Part of the Voyage, about the Discovery; but the Captain always treated every body *too well*, if I may be allowed the Expresssion, inso-much, that I often wondered at it; for he used to take more upon him in the *Hudson's-Bay* Service; and I have heard him say, that he could put up with all that could be endured rather than that the Discovery should be baulked. He never hindered any body from keeping what Account they would, and would always readily instruct any Officer that would ask him, in observing the Latitude, Variation, or any other curious Matter, and shewed several how to keep Journals that had never been at Sea before, and preferred them in the Voyage according to their Merit, tho' he had never seen them before.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

The first Discourse that happened concerning the Neglect of the Discovery, was by the Lieutenant and my speaking together in the Boat, when we went the second time to *Deer* Sound, which was overheard by some of the Boat's Crew, and told again to the Captain; which, in my Opinion, was the Occasion of his sending up the River again; and he said he would cane the Lieutenant, broomstick the Master, and whip all the rest that spoke any thing

about the Passage. This was spoke to Mr. *Wygate* and me, when the Lieutenant and Master was gone down the River.

*Clerk's Answer.*

I think it very certain that the Lieutenant and Master would not have been sent up the River again, had it not been rumoured in the Ship that the Discovery was neglected; and that when the Lieutenant was gone up the River, he sent for the Surgeon and myself into the Great Cabbin, where, with great Vehemence, " he threatned to cane the Lieutenant, broomstick the Master, and whip all the rest that should concern themselves in relation to his Conduct."

Q U E R Y VI.

*Whether, when the Lieutenant and Master were carried out of the River by the Rapidity of the Tide, upon a long Piece of Ice, they were not carried by the Ebb to the south-westward, close by the Rocks round Cape Dobbs; and whether the Ebb did not run by that Cape to the south-westward?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

Yes, we were carried to the south-westward nigh the Rocks on the south Shore of *Cape Dobbs*, by the Tide of Ebb, and drove from *Wager River* 6 or 7 Leagues.

*Master's Answer.*

When we were drove out of the River *Wager's* Mouth by the Rapidity of the Ebb Tide, upon a large Piece of Ice, we were carried S. E. b. S. as the Course of Land lies by Compass from the River's Mouth, towards *Cape Dobbs*, until we met the Channel Ebb, from the W. b. S. by Compass.

*Surgeon's*

*Surgeon's Answer.*

The Lieutenant and Master can give the best Account of this Article.

*Clerk's Answer.*

This the Lieutenant and Master have often affirmed to be Truth; tho' at this time the Master prevaricates, for fear, as he says, he should be the Ruin of any Man.

Q U E R Y VII.

*Whether, when the Ships sailed out of the River, they did not ply to the north-eastward with Sails and Oars, to be out of the way of the Tide of Flood from the southward upon its Return, lest it should force them again up the River ?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

This Article the whole Ship's Company can prove as well as myself; for I affirm, that we ply'd with Sails and Oars to the eastward, to get out of a Tide of Flood (which I apprehend and believe came from the south-westward) for fear of being horsed into *Wager* River again.

*Master's Answer.*

When we sailed out of the River *Wager*, we ply'd to the eastward with Sails and Oars, to get out of the Indraft of the River's Flood from the eastward, but not from the southward, until you get within the Indraft of the River, and then indeed, the Flood hath the Course as in all Inlets.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

This Article is so well known by every one that was then a board, that it is allowed by all, that we plyed to the north-eastward with Sails, Ship's Oars, and two Boats a-head, to be out of the Tide of Flood form

to Mr. Wygate  
after was gone

Lieutenant and  
p the River a-  
e Ship that the  
when the Lieu-  
nt for the Sur-  
n, where, with  
cane the Lieu-  
nd whip all the  
s in relation to

d Master were  
lity of the Tide,  
ot carried by the  
be Rocks round  
not run by that

-westward nigh  
e Dobbs, by the  
er River 6 or 7

River *Wager's*  
Tide, upon a  
E. b. S. as the  
om the River's  
met the Chan-  
ppas.

*Surgeon's*

from the southward, lest it should drive us up the River again.

*Clerk's Answer.*

Certainly. We hawl'd away to the eastward with all the Sail we could croud, rowing with the Ship's Oars, and towing with the Boats, to avoid our being forced into the River *Wager* again, by a Tide of Flood that came from the south-westward.

### Q U E R Y VIII.

*Whether the Captain did not order the Lieutenant on Shore at the Low Beach at half an Hour after two, when they were four Miles from the Shore, and at three made a Signal for him to return on board, before he reached the Shore, or could fix the Current of the Tide?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

Yes, it is true.

*Master's Answer.*

The Captain did order the Lieutenant a-shore at the Low Beach, near the Point, at half an Hour after two, to observe how much the Tide had ebbed by the Shore; but the Ship soon after meeting with much Ice, and we seeing no Land to the northward in our Way, thought we should loose time; for 'tis very dangerous to have the Boat from the Ship amongst Ice, as we well know in the *Hudson's-Bay* Voyages, where the Tide is strong, and often crushes them to pieces, putting the Men in danger of their Lives; and if such a Misfortune had happened to us, we could not have brought the Ship home, eight of the Men being gone.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

I believe every Officer's Journal makes mention of this Article, and acknowledges it to be true and Matter of Fact.

*Clerk's*

*Clerk's Answer.*

This Article every Journal and Log-book confesses to be true.

Q U E R Y IX.

*Whether the Neap Tides were not higher at Church-bill with a north-westerly Wind, than the Spring Tides were with an easterly Wind?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

That is known by every Person who has any Knowledge of the Tides in *Churchbill* River, and is Fact.

*Master's Answer.*

The Neap Tides at *Churchbill*, as I have heard, but had no Trial of it, the River being full of Ice, the most Part of the time we were there, used to rise higher with a northerly Wind by some Feet, than a Spring Tide doth with a southerly Wind, or south-east Wind.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

This is well known to every one that ever observed the Tides in *Churchbill* River.

*Clerk's Answer.*

Every Person who has been at *Churchbill* River knows, that the north-westerly Winds make higher Tides there on the Neap, than easterly Winds on the Spring.

Q U E R Y X.

*Whether the Tide at the Point near Brook Cobham in 63° 20', nigh the Land, as they went northward from Churchill, was not as rapid as the Tide in the River Wager; or whether at that time they could ascertain the Flood from the Ebb, and whether by falling off from the Land to the eastward, they did not lose that Tide?*

*The*

*Clerk's*



*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

The Tide at the Point near Brook Cobham in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , nigh the Land, was as rapid as that in *Wager* River; but I think there was no proper Method used to ascertain the Tide of Flood, or Ebb, no Person being sent on Shore; and the Course of the Tide, which was very impetuous, being never tried but once at that Place.

*Master's Answer.*

The Tide near the Headland, in Latitude  $63^{\circ} 20'$  N. as we went northwards from *Churchill*, was tried several times, and run two Miles an Hour from the eastward. But Land-men on board, and Sailors also, if not well acquainted with Navigation, may, in such Cases where the Ship is under Sail, the Boat at Anchor, or the Current-Log riding her, be easily led into very false Conclusions. In this particular Case, the Current ran two Miles an Hour, and the Ship went two or three Knots, slanting from the Boat, which made it appear to some not well vers'd in the Nature and Effects of Currents, as if the Ship made double the way she really did.

As we went off the Land, we had less Tides, as we always experience, in proportion as we depart from the Coast.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

The Rapidity of the Tide here filled several aboard with Joy and Hopes of finding a Passage without going much farther to the northward; but these Hopes were soon changed by the Captain's falling off from the Land to the eastward, and by that means lost the Tide.

*Clerk's Answer.*

I never saw more rapid Tides at any Place than near Brook Cobham, in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , and am sure no Person

fon  
Kno  
Ebb  
but  
rect  
ther

W  
pent  
and  
Cape  
from  
they  
was  
and  
Strai  
and  
Land  
out a  
Boat  
the T

I r  
on Sh

Th  
and C  
the P  
no.  
furthe  
afterw  
Tide  
that n  
Low  
drivin  
was h



son did make effectual Trial for ascertaining the Knowledge of the Tide of Flood from the Tide of Ebb ; for the Current of the Tide there was tried but once, and that by Captain *Middleton*, who directly afterwards hawled away to the eastward, and thereby lost the strong Tide.

### Q U E R Y X I.

*Whether it did not appear by the Gunner's and Carpenter's Account, who went farther than the Captain and Clerk by two or three Miles, when they landed at Cape Frigid, that they were upon an Island cut off from the Low Beach, and that the Frozen Strait which they saw, was what surrounded that Island, which was not above three Leagues wide, and full of Islands ; and whether they did not see high Land beyond that Strait to the eastward, and so round to the Low Beach ; and whether they could see a Strait beyond that high Land, at least 15 Leagues farther to the south-east without a Telescope ; and whether upon his Return to the Boat at low Water, he did not then take the Height of the Tide ?*

#### *The Lieutenant's Answer.*

I refer this Article to the Gentlemen who were on Shore on that Part of the Land.

#### *Master's Answer.*

The Captain strictly enquired of the Carpenter and Gunner concerning the *Frozen Strait*, whether the Place they were landed upon was an Island or no. They answered it was not, for they could see further from where they were than he ; and it was afterwards confirmed on board that there was no Tide from out the Bay, between the Mountains that made one Side of the *Frozen Straits* and the Low Beach. Whilst the Ship was working and driving to stay for the Boat's coming on board, she was hawled almost into the *Frozen Straits*, upon the

Ebb, and set from it on the Flood, tho' the Wind blew right off it, so that she was obliged to set Sail and stand from it, when the Captain went away with the Boat, until we got some distance from his Indraft. The Captain took the Height of the Tide when he returned to the Boat. By the Account the Men gave him when he got back, the Tide had flowed four Feet, and he afterwards found by the Marks on Shore, that it flowed fifteen or sixteen Feet in all; and that a west or west-by-south Moon, made high Water.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

This I refer to those who were a-shore at *Cape Frigid.*

*Clerk's Answer.*

I steered the Boat a-shore (the Gunner and Carpenter being two of the Boat's Crew.) Immediately after our Landing we left the Boat, and went inland, without taking any notice of the Direction of the Tide. We travelled several Miles from Mountain to Mountain till we came to a very high one on the S.E. Part of the Island (for I am very sure) from a Channel I saw, which disjoined it from the Low Beach, and another I saw to the northward, as well as from the Gunner's and Carpenter's Account, that the Land we then stood upon was an Island washed on all Sides by the Sea the Ships were in. The Gunner and Carpenter, as well as the Captain and myself, saw very high Land beyond that Strait to the eastward; and I think it impossible to discover a Strait over that high Land, with any Instrument we had then on Shore; for we had nothing but the common Prospect-Glass, and that not used. The Captain and myself returned to the Boat, sending the Gunner and Carpenter to overlook the Chanel on the east Side of the Island. When we came to the Boat, it was near low Water; and the Captain ask'd

which  
made  
that  
being  
the F  
serve  
the sa  
ward

W  
Brook  
the w  
Inlets  
it wa  
only t  
and re  
or we  
until  
many

I a  
stingu  
Frigid  
to the  
part  
Nigh  
We s  
enoug  
till w  
ral W

W  
so ne  
and p  
tle ha  
then

ho' the Wind  
ged to set Sail  
ent away with  
nce from its  
ht of the Tide  
e Account the  
the Tide had  
found by the  
een or sixteen  
y-fourth Moon,

which way the Tide of Flood ran, and was told, it made its Course to the northward. About 7 o'Clock that Evening he took the Height of the Tide, it being at that time low Water, and three Days after the Full of the Moon. The Lieutenant likewise observed, that the Ships in lying to, about 10 o'Clock the same Morning, were forced to the north-eastward very rapidly, which must be by a Flood Tide.

### Q U E R Y XII.

Shore at Cape

*Whether upon their Return from Cape Frigid to Brook Cobham, they were within such a Distance of the west Land, as to descry the Bottom of the Bays or Inlets, so as to know it to be a main Land; whether it was not for the most part hazy Weather, so as only to descry the Tops of the Mountains and Headlands; and whether they did not pass great Part in the Night, or were even nearer the Coast than five or six Leagues, until they came near Brook Cobham, where they saw many Whales?*

anner and Car-  
(w.) Immedi-  
boat, and went  
the Direction of  
from Mountain  
one on the S.E.

#### *The Lieutenant's Answer.*

from a Chan-  
e Low Beach,  
as well as from  
ount, that the  
nd washed on  
n. The Gun-  
tain and my-  
at Strait to the  
to discover a  
Instrument we  
g but the com-  
d. The Cap-  
t, sending the  
the Chancel on  
e came to the  
Captain ask'd  
which

I acknowledge that I could never properly distinguish the Headlands in our Return from Cape Frigid to Brook Cobham, and did not come nearer to the west Shore than five or six Leagues; some part of the time was hazy Weather; some part Night; and some part very fine clear Weather. We searched neither Inlets nor Bays, nor came near enough any Land to the westward to distinguish it, till we came to Brook Cobham, where we saw several Whales.

#### *Master's Answer.*

We made sure to search all the west Shore, so near as to see all the Bottom of the Bays, and plainly make it main Land. We had very little hazy Weather, except in the Night time, and then we lay to, or work'd to Windward, to hold

our own till Day-light, that we might miss no Place that appeared like Openings or Inlets. We were within three or four Leagues of most Places, and where it was bold, we came within two Leagues, as off the Headland, where we found the Tide to run two Miles an Hour in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , and from  $64^{\circ}$  to Brook *Cobham*, we were sure of the main Land all the Way.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

After we left Cape *Frigid*, I do not remember we ever were nearer the west Shore than five or six Leagues, so could not discover whether it was Islands, and broken Land, Inlets, or Bays, or a main Continent, and seldom discerned the Land, except some high Bluff or Point amongst the Clouds, it being somewhat thick and hazy Weather; so never touched at any Land till we came to Brook *Cobham*, where we saw several black Whales. We passed by the Point of this Island, and dropt Anchor on the west Side of *Marble Island*, to the westward of Brook *Cobham*.

*Clerk's Answer.*

It appears from the different Journals and Log-Books, that we were not nearer to that Land than five or six Leagues, and that most part of the time it was hazy Weather, and past by a great Part in the Night, until we came to Brook *Cobham*, and there we saw several Whales.

Q U E R Y XIII.

*Whether the Captain ever once sent his Boat on Shore to try the Tides, or search for any Inlet upon that Coast, until he watered at Marble Island, upon his Return to England, where the Mast.r discovered a Tide, which some times rose twenty-two Feet; and whether, when he desired again to go on Shore to make further Observations, the Captain did not prevent him, and refuse him Liberty; and whether, during the whole*

*Voyage*

*Voyage from Churchill until their Return, they had not good Weather to make a thorough Discovery?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

We had very good Weather; the Master must answer the rest; there was no Boat sent on Shore to try the Tide from Cape *Frigid* to Brook *Cobham*.

*Master's Answer.*

The Reason the Boat was not sent on Shore to try the Tide, was, that when she was mann'd, we could not find Men to work the Ship, or reef a Sail or hand one; we could try the Tide by a Current-Log, which the Captain has used for many Years, as well, if not better on board, or in a Boat, than nearer the Shore in almost all Weathers. As we had got the Time of high Water at the *Frozen Straits* and *Wager River's* Mouth, we were very secure, which was the Ebb and Flood; and if we got the Slacks it was sufficient for determining the Tides. The rest of the Way, both myself and the Lieutenant had Orders to observe the Tides, at Brook *Cobham*, and elsewhere; and that every Hour when we could do it without Loss of time by the aforesaid Current-Log.

I can't recollect, that the Captain ever hindered my going a-shore upon any such Account, or did I desire of him to go a-shore. We got what Water we wanted at Brook *Cobham*, and made what Observations were necessary there. We saw the main Land within us, and how much the Tide had flow'd at the highest, by Marks left on the Shore. The Ship lay in a dangerous Roadstead, if the Wind came on the Shore or thick Weather; so that the Boat could not find the Ship. We durst not let go one of our Bower Anchors, having but two left; and the Men, when our Boat was from the Ship, could not get it up again, if it had blown so as to make a Sea; for they

mifs no Place  
s. We were  
t Places, and  
two Leagues,  
the Tide to  
and from 64<sup>o</sup>  
main Land all

not remember  
than five or six  
whether it was  
ays, or a main  
Land, except  
the Clouds, it  
her; so never  
Brook *Cobham*,  
We pass'd by  
Anchor on the  
westward of

nals and Log-  
at Land than  
t of the time  
great Part in  
*Cobham*, and

*Boat on Shore*  
let upon that  
Land, upon his  
discovered a  
oo Feet; and  
Shore to make  
prevent him,  
ring the whole  
*Voyage*



they grew worse every day, and we had not above six in both Watches, besides three or four Officers, that could go up to hand or reef. It was a Mercy we got our two Ships home again, as we had *Hudson's Straits* to pass, where our Rigging and Sails freeze in *June* and *July*; so that when our Men are in the best Health, we have much a-do to keep them upon Deck in their Watch. The Weather was extraordinary good all the time we lay in *Wager River*, and in our Passage home also, else God knows what we should have done.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

There was never any Boat sent a-shore, nor no Search made near the west Land, from our leaving *Cape Frigid*, till we came to *Marble Island*, and I do not know any Reason why we did not; for out of fifty-three Men and Boys, we brought out from *Churchill*, we had but eight that were incapable of doing their Duty, as I am very well assured from my sick Book, so never wanted a Boat's Crew upon any Emergency; and when the Master gave an Account of the Tide at *Marble Island* rising twenty-two Feet, and was desirous of going a-shore again, to be more fully satisfied, the Captain told him, he should be damn'd before he went a-shore again, till he came to *England*. We had fine pleasant, clear, and moderate Weather almost the whole Voyage.

*Clerk's Answer.*

No not once; and I heard him tell the Master, that he should not go a-shore again till he came to *England*, after he had been on *Marble Island*. We had very fine Weather the major part of our Voyage from *Churchill*, till our Return for *England*.

Q U E R Y



## Q U E R Y XIV.

*Whether this Neglect was not after owning in Council, that they had found rapid Tides, broken Lands and Islands, upon that Coast, as they sailed northwards from Churchill, but had no Opportunity of knowing from whence the Tides came ?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

Yes, it is true.

*Master's Answer.*

I never heard of any Neglect, nor could any be charged on the Captain, tho' he was in a bad State of Health for many Months, and all the Winter, yet he kept the Deck more than any Officer in the Ship. The Tide we found in  $63^{\circ} 20'$  in shore, was not half so strong as what we found in the New Strait, between the River *Wager* and Cape *Hope* in the *Narrows*. I tried several times myself when almost calm, and it broke our deep Sea-line, in bringing up our small Boat, and lost our Grapling.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

As to this Article, the Council held will testify, which was signed by the Captain, Lieutenant, Mr. *Moor*, and Mr. *Wilson*.

*Clerk's Answer.*

The whole Council owned, they had seen rapid Tides, broken Lands and Islands on the west Side of the *Welcome*, as they sailed northwards from *Churchill*, but had not Opportunity of trying from whence the Flood came, yet neglected to try the Tides, &c. in our Return from Cape *Frigid* towards *Brook Cobham*.

## Q U E R Y XV.

*Whether there were any Sign of the Eskimaux Indians having ever been at Cape Frigid, and whether they*

d not above  
our Officers,  
was a Mercy  
we had Hud-  
ing and Sails  
our Men are  
do to keep  
The Weather  
lay in *Wager*  
e God knows

ore, nor no  
our leaving  
Island, and  
did not ; for  
brought out  
were unca-  
well assured  
Boat's Crew  
Master gave  
Island rising  
going a-shore  
Captain told  
went a-shore  
ad fine plea-  
st the whole

the Master,  
he came to  
Island. We  
our Voyage  
land.

U E R Y

they had not Marks of their being every where above Savage Sound to the westward in Wager River; and since they have all their Necessaries from the Whales they kill, if any Number had passed a Strait near Cape Frigid, whether in so narrow a Strait it had been a better Place for those Indians to have killed Whales, than in Wager River, in case they came in from thence, and not from the westward.

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

I was not a-shore at Cape Frigid, therefore must refer this Article to be answered by those who were ashore at that Place.

*Master's Answer.*

I was not on Shore on Cape Frigid, to see the Signs of any of the Savages. There can be no Whales killed at the Frozen Straits which is always froze over, or much Ice a driving in the Tide's way.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

Those that were a-shore at Cape Frigid can give the best Account of this Article.

*Clerk's Answer.*

I could perceive no Signs of the *Eskimaux* Indians having ever been on Cape Frigid, tho' I looked very narrowly for them, but have seen the Marks of their Residence on every Part of the Coast of the River *Wager* I was at, and do imagine, if the Whales, of the Whalebone kind, had come thro' that narrow Strait near Cape Frigid, we should certainly have seen the Marks of those *Indians* having been there, as the Whales are their chief Support, and of great use to them, in compleating their Canoes, Weapons of War, Hunting, Fishing, &c.

QUERY

Q U E R Y X V I.

*Whether the Lieutenant did not press the Captain to let him take a Man from Churchill Factory, who understood perfectly the northern Indian Language, and that he would take the Blame upon himself, in case any Complaint should be made upon his Return, since it would be of so great Service to promote the Discovery, but the Captain would not allow it?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

This Article is Matter of Fact, as I have often times declared it to be so, as others can testify as well as myself.

*Master's Answer.*

I do not remember that the Lieutenant did press the Captain to take another Man; but if he did so, in my Opinion, the Captain did much better in getting two northern *Indians*, that pretended to know the Country, and speak the Languages of several Nations; and also a third *Indian* from the Factory, who could converse with these two northern *Indians*, he having travelled with them several Winters before, and understood *English* besides.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

This whole Article is Truth, it being first spoke in my hearing, and often repeated since by the Lieutenant.

*Clerk's Answer.*

This Article is true; for I very well remember the Lieutenant's Inclination to impress him, and the Captain's forbidding him.

Q U E R Y X V I I.

*Whether, from the rapid Tides near Brook Cobham, and from the Number of Whales seen there, they did not apprehend there might also have been a Passage there-*

A a

*abouts,*

abouts, and whether by the best Accounts they could get from the Indians, by the Interpreter they had, they did not intimate that the Strait and Copper Mine they had been at, where they saw a great many large black Fish, was somewhere thereabouts, before they fell in with the Ice, and whether the Captain did not threaten the Surgeon, upon Account of his being so intimate and corresponding with the Indians, and for his attempting to come at the Knowledge of that Strait and Passage from them?

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

I have given my Opinion of the Rapidity of the Tides near Brook Cobham before, but I know nothing of the northern Indian Language, and therefore beg Leave to refer their Lordships to the Surgeon and Clerk's Accounts.

*Master's Answer.*

As to the rapid Tides near Brook Cobham, they all came from the Eastward, the Course of the *Welcome*. As to Whales, 'tis only a Conjecture from whence they come. We had no manner of Account from the *Indians* of any Passage on the Coast where we went, neither did I so much as hear one Word mentioned about it, either whilst they were with us, or, since till now, nor concerning black Fish near the Copper Mine; I never heard that the Captain had any Words in Anger with the Surgeon on any such Account, during the Voyage, but on the contrary, he used him too well, by passing by many of his Insolences to himself and others.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

The Reasons here set down were obvious and plain to every one that had any real Sense or Knowledge of what we were about, and was the Occasion chiefly of the Murmur in *Wager River*; for that

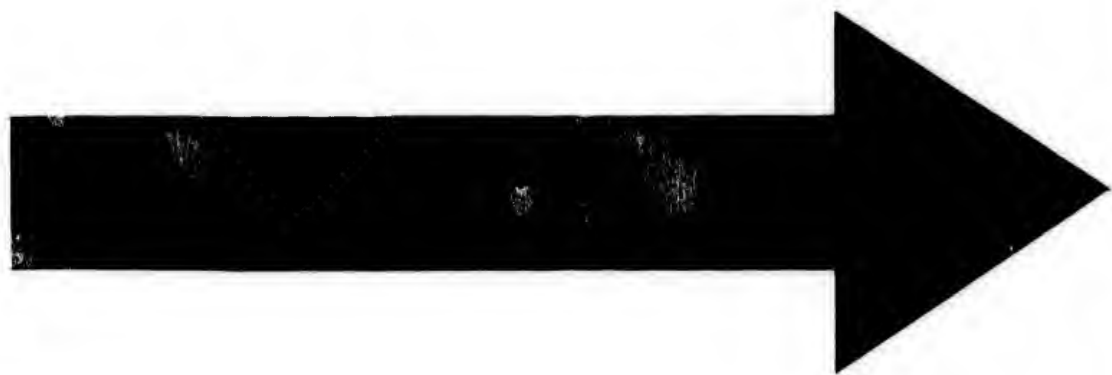
that I  
with  
on of  
before  
now  
as W  
an Ac  
broke  
Sea f  
and a  
likew  
River  
ber o  
that  
there  
ver o  
ther f  
when  
eastw  
to th  
have  
of th  
down  
me,  
of sev  
long  
and t  
any  
tuna

F  
20',  
appr  
that  
then  
cern

that River, together with what Occurrences we met with there, served only to confirm us in our Opinion of what we had seen, and been well informed of before, particularly, from one *Richard Lovegrove*, now at *Churchill*, and had been in the Sloop as far as *Whale Cove*, and travelled in Land, he gave us an Account that there was nothing but Islands and broken Lands there, and that he could see a clear Sea from the Top of the Hills to the South-west, and a rapid Tide run amongst the Islands there, likewise the two *Indians* gave us an Account of a River or Straits, Salt-water and deep, a great Number of large black Fish, spouting up the Water, and that they were five Days in crossing it, and that there was a Copper Mine upon the Side of this River or Strait, and by the best Accounts I could gather from them, it was somewhere hereabouts; and when we left *Brook Cobham*, and sailed to the North-eastward, they told us, that that was not the Way to the Copper Mine, but were going from it. I have now by me a short Vocabulary of some Part of the northern *Indian* Language, which I penned down from them, they being desirous of teaching me, and also of learning *English*, and were perfect of several Words; but this Proceeding did not last long, for the Captain threatened to cut my Ears off, and take away my Books and Papers, if ever I had any further Correspondence with those two unfortunate *Indians*.

*Clerk's Answer.*

From the rapid Tides at *Brook Cobham* in  $63^{\circ} 20'$ , and from the Number of Whales seen there, I apprehend there is a Western Ocean not far from that Place, but desire their Lordships would refer themselves to the Account given by the Surgeon concerning the *Indian's* Report of the Copper Mine.







1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0 4.5  
5.0 5.6 6.3 7.1 8.0

10  
5  
2.5  
1.5  
0.8

## Q U E R Y XVIII.

*Whether the two northern Indians were not desirous of coming to England, and were not, contrary to their Inclinations, put on Shore on an Island in 63°, some Leagues from the Main, in an indifferent Boat, which they could not rightly manage, their Enemies being upon the Coast, and they far from their own Country?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

I believe they were desirous of coming to *England*, but know not upon what Account they were set ashore.

*Master's Answer.*

One of the northern *Indians* seemed at their going away from us to be somewhat dejected, but the Captain told us, that he had promised both the Governor and their Friends, to put them safe on shore, so that they might get to their own Home, or to *Churchill*, loaded with Goods that they liked; that he had no Orders from the Admiralty to bring them home; and as they were at *Brook Cobham* in 63° Latitude, about 2 or 3 Leagues from the main Land, and several small Islands between that and the Main, and in fine Weather, and Water as smooth as the *Thames*, the Boat was very well, and they might easily manage her, as they had been shewn, what Distance they had to shore or along shore, as they pleased. They knew their Ways home very well, as they told us, and were sufficiently fortified against all the Men in the Country, having Fire-arms well stocked with Ammunition, and more of every Thing than they could well carry. They were but 250 Miles from their own Country, or the Company's Factory, which is nothing for an *Indian* to travel.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

These two *Indians* left their Wives and Families, and

and came on board intirely to show us the Copper Mine before mentioned; but after we left Brook Cobham in going out, we persuaded them to go to *England*, with Promises of large Presents and Gratuities when they arrived there. They readily consented to it, upon Condition they should return to their own Country again the next Year. After this Agreement made, the Captain altered his Opinion, and said he would put them ashore again; but desired that neither the Linguist nor I would tell them, for fear of giving them Uneasiness, and causing a Murmuring in the Ship, they being well liked by every one, beginning to be very handy on Deck. This was never discovered to them, till we came to *Marble Island*; and then the Captain order'd them into an old leaky Boat, with two Oars, a Mast and Sails, which neither of them knew how to manage, first giving each of them a Gun, Powder, Shot, Hatchets, Ice-Chizels, Knives, Awls, Beads, Rings, &c. one of them called *Jazana* cried very much, and continually expressed the Danger they should be exposed to, being far from their own Families, Winter approaching, in a strange Place they did not know, and in the midst of their mortal Enemies, the *Esquimaux*, who would first scalp them, and then devour them; but all this would not prevail upon the Captain; for they were actually forced over the Ship Side into the Boat, and towed ashore upon *Marble Island*, in the Latitude 63°, and there left.

*Clerk's Answer.*

They were desirous of coming to *England*, and with aching Hearts, poor Creatures, were put on shore, of which Mr. *Thomson* has given a particular Account. The Reason Captain *Middleton* gave for putting them on shore was, as he said, lest those *Indians*, when they came to *England*, should, by their chattering of the Copper Mine, and strait thereabouts,

abouts, put the Government to the Expence of fitting Ships out again, to make Trial of a Passage that Way once more.

Q U E R Y X I X.

*Whether the Lieutenant, Surgeon and Clerk did not bear the Captain say at Churchill to the Governor and Officers of the Hudson's Bay Company, that he should be able to make that Voyage, and no Man on board him should know whether there was a Passage or not, and that he would be a better Friend to the Company than ever?*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

Yes, it is true.

*Master's Answer.*

What passed between the Captain and the *Hudson's Bay Company's* Officers about the Discovery, I know nothing of; but if the Captain said any Thing of this Nature, I should take his Meaning to be, that there could not be any on board, but the Lieutenant and myself, able to judge or know where they were, without being told, we were so well officered and manned; its impossible for either Land or Seamen, that are not thoroughly acquainted with Navigation, both in Theory and Practice, more especially in those Parts of the unknown World, so much as to guess whereabouts they are.

As for being a Friend to the *Hudson's Bay Company*, if he said so, I should not doubt that it was on account of his being in a Ship of War, and had his Instructions to give them and their Trade Protection.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

Yes, several Times, not only aboard, when the Governor of the *Hudson's Bay Company* and his Officers were present, but in the Factory, in the public Guard Room.

*Clerk's*

*Clerk's Answer.*

I heard him repeat those Words more than once.

## QUERY XX.

*Whether his Conduct was not suitable to that Declaration afterwards upon the Discovery, by discouraging and discountenancing every one on board, from being inquisitive about it, or making any Observations which promoted the Discovery; threatening to take their Books and Papers from them, and being very careful that nothing should be entered into the Logg Book, which should give any Hopes of a Passage, but barely the common Occurrences on board the Ship, which related to the sailing of the Ship and Winds, Soundings, &c.*

*The Lieutenant's Answer.*

I believe it was so, and that some of the Officers on board were discouraged and discountenanced from being inquisitive about it, or making any Observations which might promote the intended Discovery. But I can't say that the Captain discouraged or discountenanced me in making any Discovery, tho' some of the Officers of the Ship are of another Opinion; nor did I ever hear the Captain threaten to take their Books and Papers from them, or give Orders that nothing should be entered in the Logg Book which should give any Hopes of a Passage.

*Master's Answer.*

The Captain, as I have observed before, seemed on all Occasions heartily to encourage the Discovery, and was ever free in communicating and instructing every Officer and Man on board that would at any time desire it of him, either in Navigation or the Seaman's Part, as none is better qualified to do it, and the Lieutenant, as well as myself, have experienced



experienced the Benefit thereof, and must own it. He always order'd me and my Mate to take Care to omit nothing that might be of Service either for the present or future Good and Advantage of others; and to represent him in any other Light, I am thoroughly satisfied, is doing him barbarous Injustice.

*Surgeon's Answer.*

This I think is already made evident by most of the foregoing Articles; and the whole Discovery was answerable, and of one Piece with that notable Expression of Captain *Middleton's* when we were at *Churchill*.

*Clerk's Answer.*

I have the greatest Reason to believe his Conduct was suitable to the aforementioned Declaration, not only by his discountenancing and discouraging every one on board by threatening Words, but by his sailing continually to the North-eastwards, thereby losing the strong Tides; making an imaginary frozen Strait in his Draughts; wilfully mistaking the Flood near Cape *Frigid* for the Tide of Ebb, as I have before mentioned in Answer to Query 11, on Purpose to bring the Flood Tide from the *Atlantick Ocean*; from his Neglect of trying the Tides, or searching any Inlets or Bays on the western Side of the *Welcome*, and from his absolute manner of marking what he thought most conducive to his Design, on the Logg Board.

A N

A  
Ex  
I  
O  
Wh  
Part  
all  
whic  
T  
abov  
in V  
Y  
Dep  
Win  
the  
But  
ral

( 193 )

---

---

Captain MIDDLETON'S

# A C C O U N T

O F T H E

Extraordinary Degrees and Surprising  
Effects of COLD in *Hudson's-Bay*,  
*North America*, read before the *Royal*  
*Society*, Oct. 28, 1742 \*.

I Observed, that the *Hares*, *Rabbets*, *Foxes* and  
*Partridges*, in *September*, and the Beginning of  
*October*, changed their native Colour to a snowy  
White, and that for six Months, in the severest  
Part of the Winter, I never saw any but what were  
all white, except some *Foxes* of a different Sort,  
which were grizzled, and some half red, half white.  
That Lakes and standing Waters, which are not  
above 10 or 12 Feet deep, are frozen to the Ground  
in Winter, and the Fishes therein all perish.

Yet in Rivers near the Sea, and Lakes of a greater  
Depth than 10 or 12 Feet, Fishes are caught all the  
Winter, by cutting Holes through the Ice down to  
the Water, and therein putting Lines and Hooks.  
But if they are to be taken with Nets, they cut se-  
veral Holes in a strait Line the Length of the Net, and

B b

pass

pass the Net, with a Stick fastened to the Head-line, from Hole to Hole, till it reaches the utmost Extent; and what Fishes come to these Holes for Air, ate thereby entangled in the Net; and these Fish, as soon as brought into the open Air, are instantaneously frozen as stiff as Stock-fish. The Seamen likewise freshen their salt Provisions, by cutting a large Hole through the Ice in the Stream or Tide of the River, which they do at the Beginning of the Winter, and keep it open all that Season. In this Hole they put their salt Meat, and the Minute it is immersed under Water, it becomes pliable and soft, though before its Immersion it was hard frozen.

*Beef, Pork, Mutton, and Venison*, that are killed at the Beginning of the Winter, are preserved by the Frost, for six or seven Months, intirely free from Putrefaction, and prove tolerable good Eating. Likewise *Geese, Partridges*, and other Fowl, that are killed at the same time, and kept with their Feathers on, and Guts in, require no other Preservative but the Frost to make them good wholesome Eating, as long as the Winter continues. All kinds of Fish are preserved in the like manner.

In large Lakes and Rivers, the Ice is sometimes broken by imprisoned Vapours; and the Rocks, Trees, Joists and Rafters of our Buildings, are burst with a Noise not less terrible than the firing off a great many Guns together. The Rocks which are split by the Frost, are heaved up in great Heaps, leaving large Cavities behind; which I take to be caused by imprisoned watery Vapours, that require more Room, when frozen, than they occupy in their fluid State. Neither do I think it unaccountable, that the Frost should be able to tear up Rocks and Trees, and split the Beams of our Houses, when I consider the great Force and Elasticity thereof. If Beer or Water is left in Mugs, Cans, Bottles, nay in Copper-pots, though they were put by our Bed-sides,

in

in a severe Night, they are surely split to pieces before Morning, not being able to withstand the expansive Force of the inclosed Ice.

The Air is filled with innumerable Particles of Ice, very sharp and angular, and plainly perceptible to the naked Eye. I have several times this Winter tried to make Observations of some celestial Bodies, particularly the Emerfions of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, with reflecting and refracting Telescopes; but the Metals and Glasses, by that Time I could fix them to the Object, were covered a quarter of an Inch thick with Ice, and thereby the Object rendered indistinct, so that it is not without great Difficulties that any Observations can be taken.

Bottles of *strong Beer, Brandy, strong Brine, Spirits of Wine*, set out in the open Air for three or four Hours, freeze to solid Ice. I have tried to get the Sun's Refraction here to every Degree above the Horizon, with *Elton's* Quadrant, but to no purpose, for the Spirits froze almost as soon as brought into open Air.

The Frost is never out of the Ground, how deep we cannot be certain. We have dug down 10 or 12 Feet, and found the Earth hard frozen in the two Summer Months; and what Moisture we find five or six Feet down, is white like Ice.

The Waters or Rivers near the Sea, where the Current of the Tide flows strong, do not freeze above 9 or 10 Feet deep.

All the Water we use for Cooking, Brewing, &c. is melted Snow and Ice; no Spring is yet found free from freezing, though dug never so deep down. All Waters inland are frozen fast by the Beginning of *October*, and continue so till the Middle of *May*.

The Walls of the House we live in are of Stone, two Feet thick, the Windows very small, with thick wooden Shutters, which are close shut 18 Hours every Day in the Winter. There are Cellars

under the House, wherein we put our *Wines, Brandy, strong Beer, Butter, Cheese, &c.* Four large Fires are made in great Stoves, built on purpose, every Day: As soon as the Wood is burnt down to a Coal, the Tops of the Chimneys are close stopped with an Iron Cover: This keeps the Heat within the House (though at the same time the Smoke makes our Heads ake, and is very offensive and unwholsome); notwithstanding which, in four or five Hours after the Fire is out, the Inside of the Walls of our House and Bed-places will be two or three Inches thick with Ice, which is every Morning cut away with a Hatchet. Three or four times a Day we make Iron Shot of 24 Pounds Weight red-hot, and hang them up in the Windows of our Apartments. I have a good Fire in my Room the major Part of the 24 Hours; yet all this will not preserve my *Beer, Wine, Ink, &c.* from freezing.

For our Winter Dress we make use of three Pair of Socks of coarse Blanketing or Duffield for the Feet, with a Pair of *Deer-skin* Shoes over them; two Pair of thick *English* Stockings, and a Pair of Cloth Stockings upon them; Breeches lined with Flannel; two or three *English* Jackets, and a Fur or Leather Gown over them; a large Beaver Cap, double, to come over the Face and Shoulders, and a Cloth of Blanketing under the Chin; with Yarn Gloves, and a large Pair of Beaver Mittings hanging down from the Shoulders before, to put our Hands in, which reach up as high as our Elbows; yet notwithstanding this warm Cloathing, almost every Day, some of the Men that stir abroad, if any Wind blows from the northward, are dreadfully frozen; some have their Arms, Hands, and Face blister'd and frozen in a terrible manner, the Skin coming off soon after they enter a warm House, and some have lost their Toes. Now their lying-in for the Cure of these frozen Parts, brings on the Scurvy in a lamentable manner,



manner. Many have died of it, and few are free from that Distemper. I have procured them all the Helps I could, from the Diet this Country affords in Winter, such as fresh Fish, Partridges, Broths, &c. and the Doctors have used their utmost Skill in vain; for I find nothing will prevent that Distemper from being mortal, but Exercise and stirring abroad.

*Corona* and *Parbelia*, commonly called *Halo's*, and *Mock-Suns*, appear frequently about the Sun and Moon here. They are seen once or twice a Week about the Sun, and once or twice a Month about the Moon, for four or five Months in the Winter, several *Corona* of different Diameters appearing at the same time.

I have seen five or six parallel *Corona* concentric with the Sun several times in the Winter, being for the most part very bright, and always attended with *Parbelia* or *Mock-Suns*. The *Parbelia* are always accompanied with *Corona*, if the Weather is clear; and continue for several Days together, from the Sun's Rising to his Setting. These Rings are of various Colours, and about 40 or 50 Degrees in Diameter.

The frequent Appearance of these *Phænomena* in this frozen Clime seems to confirm *Descartes's* Hypothesis, who supposes them to proceed from Ice suspended in the Air.

The *Aurora Borealis* is much oftner seen here than in *England*; seldom a Night passes in the Winter free from their Appearance. They shine with a surprising Brightness, extinguishing all the Stars and Planets, and covering the whole Hemisphere: Their tremulous Motion from all Parts, their Beauty and Lustre, are much the same as in the northern Parts of *Scotland*, *Denmark*, &c.

The dreadful long Winters here may almost be compared to the Polar Parts, where the Absence of the Sun continues for six Months; the Air being perpetually chilled and frozen by the northerly Winds



Winds in Winter, and the cold Fogs and Mists obstructing the Sun's Beams in the short Summer we have here; for notwithstanding the Snow and Ice is then dissolved in the Low-lands and Plains, yet the Mountains are perpetually covered with Snow, and incredibly large Bodies of Ice continue in the adjacent Seas. If the Wind blows from the southern Parts, the Air is tolerably warm, but insufferably cold when it comes from the northward, and it seldom blows otherwise than between the north-east and the north-west, except in the two Summer Months, when we have, for the major part, light Gales between the east and the north, and Calms:

The northerly Winds being so extremely cold, is owing to the Neighbourhood of high Mountains, whose Tops are perpetually covered with Snow, which exceedingly chills the Air passing over them. The Fogs and Mists that are brought here from the Polar Parts, in Winter, appear visible to the naked Eye in Icicles innumerable, as small as fine Hairs or Threads, and pointed as sharp as Needles. These Icicles lodge in our Cloaths, and if our Faces or Hands be uncovered, they presently raise Blisters as white as a Linnen Cloth, and as hard as Horn. Yet if we immediately turn our Backs to the Weather, and can bear our Hand out of our Mitten, and with it rub the blistered Part for a small time, we sometimes bring the Skin to its former State: If not, we make the best of our way to a Fire, and get warm Water, wherewith we bathe it, and thereby dissipate the Humours raised by the frozen Air; otherwise the Skin would be off in a short time, with much hot, serous, watry Matter coming from under along with the Skin; and this happens to some almost every time they go abroad for five or six Months in the Winter, so extreme cold is the Air when the Wind blows any thing strong.

Now

Now I have observed, that when it has been extreme hard Frost by the Thermometer, and little or no Wind that Day, the Cold has not near so sensibly affected us, as when the Thermometer has shewed much less freezing, having a brisk Gale of northerly Wind at the same time. This Difference may perhaps be occasioned by those sharp-pointed Icicles before-mentioned striking more forcibly in a windy Day, than in calm Weather, thereby penetrating the naked Skin, or Parts but thinly covered, and causing an acute Sensation of Pain or Cold: And the same Reason, I think, will hold good in other Places; for should the Wind blow northerly any thing hard for many Days together in *England*, the Icicles that would be brought from the Polar Parts by the Continuance of such a Wind, though imperceptible to the naked Eye, would more sensibly affect the naked Skin, or Parts but slightly covered, than when the Thermometer has shewn a greater Degree of freezing, and there has been little or no Wind at the same time.

It is not a little surprising to many, that such extreme Cold should be felt in these Parts of *America*, more than in Places of the same Latitude on the Coast of *Norway*; but the Difference I take to be occasioned by the Wind blowing constantly here, for seven Months in the twelve, between the north-east and north-west, and passing over a large Tract of Land, and exceeding high Mountains, &c. as before mentioned: Whereas at *Drunton* in *Norway*, as I observed some Years ago in wintering there, the Wind all the Winter comes from the north and north north-west, and crosses a great Part of the Ocean clear of those large Bodies of Ice we find here perpetually. At this Place we have constantly every Year nine Months Frost and Snow, and unufferable Cold from *October* till the Beginning of *May*. In the long Winter, as the Air becomes less ponderous

towards the Polar Parts, and nearer to an *Æquilibrium*, as it happens about one Day in a Week, we then have Calms and light Airs all round the Compass, continuing sometimes 24 Hours, and then back to its old Place again, in the same manner as it happens every Night in the *West-Indies*, near some of the Islands.

The Snow that falls here is as fine as Dust, but never any Hail, except at the Beginning and End of Winter. Almost every Full and Change of the Moon, very hard Gales from the north.

The constant Trade Winds in these northern Parts I think undoubtedly to proceed from the same Principle, which our learned Dr. *Halley* conceives to be the Cause of the Trade Winds near the Equator, and their Variations.

“ Wind, says he, is most properly defined to be  
 “ the Stream or Current of the Air; and where such  
 “ Current is perpetual and fixed in its Course, it is  
 “ necessary, that it proceed from a permanent and  
 “ unintermitting Cause, capable of producing a like  
 “ constant Effect, and agreeable to the known Pro-  
 “ perties of Air and Water, and the Laws of Motion  
 “ of fluid Bodies. Such an one is, I conceive, the  
 “ Action of the Sun’s Beams upon the Air and Wa-  
 “ ter as he passes every Day over the Oceans, confi-  
 “ dered together with the Nature of the Soil and Si-  
 “ tuation of the adjoining Continents. I say, there-  
 “ fore, first, That according to the Laws of *Statics*,  
 “ the Air which is less rarefied or expanded by  
 “ Heat, and consequently more ponderous, must  
 “ have a Motion towards those Parts thereof which  
 “ are more rarefied, and less ponderous, to bring it  
 “ to an *Æquilibrium*, &c.”

Now, that the cold dense Air, by reason of its greater Gravity, continually presses from the Polar Parts towards the Equator, where the Air is more rarefied, to preserve an *Æquilibrium* or Balance of the

the A  
 Wind  
 north  
 tober  
 the B  
 to the  
 riable  
 not d  
 be fo  
 wards  
 Signs.  
 Th  
 towar  
 yond  
 they a  
 tinuan  
 from  
 at *Car*  
 tlemen  
 titude  
 way,  
 son of  
 was b  
 contin  
 ing to  
 may v  
 the N  
 adjoin  
 Th  
 from  
 not on  
 in tru  
 great  
 thom  
 a fift  
 in C  
 somet

the Atmosphere, I think, is very evident from the Wind in those frozen Regions blowing from the north and north-west, from the Beginning of *October* until *May*; for we find, that when the Sun, at the Beginning of *June*, has warmed those Countries to the northward, then the south-east, east and variable Winds continue till *October* again; and I do not doubt but the Trade Winds and hard Gales may be found in the southern Polar Parts to blow towards the Equator, when the Sun is in the northern Signs, from the same Principle.

The Limit of these Winds from the Polar Parts, towards the Equator, is seldom known to reach beyond the 30th Degree of Latitude; and the nearer they approach to that Limit, the shorter is the Continuance of those Winds. In *New-England* it blows from the north near four Months in the Winter; at *Canada*, about five Months; at the *Danes's* Settlement in *Streights Davis*, in the 63d Degree of Latitude, near seven Months; on the Coast of *Norway*, in 64, not above 5 Months and a half, by reason of blowing over a great Part of the Ocean, as was before-mentioned; for those northerly Winds continue a longer or shorter Space of time, according to the Air's being more or less rarefied, which may very probably be altered several Degrees, by the Nature of the Soil, and the Situation of the adjoining Continents.

The vast Bodies of Ice we meet with in our Passage from *England* to *Hudson's Bay*, are very surprising, not only as to their Number, but Magnitude. It is in truth unaccountable how they are formed of so great a Bulk, some of them being immersed 100 Fathom or more under the Surface of the Ocean; and a fifth or sixth Part above, and three or four Miles in Circumference. Some hundreds of these we sometimes see in our Voyage here, all in sight at

once, if the Weather is clear. Some of them are frequently seen on the Coasts and Banks of *Newfoundland* and *New-England*, though much diminished.

When I have been becalmed in *Hudson's Streights* for three or four Tides together, I have taken my Boat, and laid close to the Side of one of them, founded, and found 100 Fathom Water all round it. The Tide floweth here above four Fathom; and I have observed, by Marks upon a Body of Ice, the Tide to rise and fall that Difference, which was a Certainty of its being aground. Likewise in a Harbour in the Island of *Resolution*, where I continued four Days, three of these Isles of Ice (as we call them) came aground. I founded along by the Side of one of them, quite round it, and found 32 Fathom Water, and the Height above the Surface but ten Yards; another was 28 Fathom under, and the perpendicular Height but nine Yards above the Water.

I can in no other manner account for the Aggregation of such large Bodies of Ice but this: All along the Coasts of *Streights Davis*, both Sides of *Baffin's Bay*, *Hudson's Streights*, *Anticost*, or *Labrador*, the Land is very high and bold, and 100 Fathoms, or more, close to the Shore. These Shores have many Inlets or Fairs, the Cavities of which are filled up with Ice and Snow, by the almost perpetual Winters there, and frozen to the Ground, increasing for four, five, or seven Years, till a kind of Deluge or Land-flood, which commonly happens in that Space of time throughout those Parts, breaks them loose, and launches them into the Streights or Ocean, where they are driven about by the variable Winds and Currents in the Months of *June*, *July*, and *August*, rather increasing than diminishing in Bulk, being surrounded (except in four or five Points

Poin  
hunc  
with  
the  
small  
and  
the  
chill  
stan  
agai  
Rain  
bein  
sma  
Pow  
nort  
cont  
Clic  
that  
get  
I an  
quin  
they  
Lat  
upp  
the  
whi  
Au  
fent  
Ob  
Ti  
Sa  
the



Points of the Compass) with smaller Ice for many hundred Leagues, and Land covered all the Year with Snow, the Weather being extreme cold, for the most part, in those Summer Months. The smaller Ice that almost fills the Streights and Bays, and covers many Leagues out into the Ocean along the Coast, is from four to ten Fathom thick, and chills the Air to that Degree, that there is a constant Increase to the large Isles by the Sea's washing against them, and the perpetual wet Fogs, like small Rain, freezing as they settle upon the Ice; and their being so deeply immersed under Water, and such a small Part above, prevents the Wind's having much Power to move them: For though it blows from the north-west Quarter near nine Months in twelve, and consequently those Isles are driven towards a warmer Climate, yet the progressive Motion is so slow, that it must take up many Years before they can get five or six hundred Leagues to the southward: I am of Opinion some hundreds of Years are requir'd; for they cannot, I think, dissolve before they come between the 50th and 40th Degree of Latitude, where the Heat of the Sun consuming the upper Parts, they lighten and waste in Time: Yet there is a perpetual Supply from the northern Parts, which will so continue as long as it pleases the AUTHOR of all Beings to keep things in their present State.

*Observations of the Longitude, Latitude, and the Declination of the Magnetic Needle, at Prince of Wales's Fort, Churchill River.*

Having observed the apparent } h.    4    11  
 Time of an Emerision of Jupiter's first }  
 Satellite at Fort Churcbill, on Saturday } 11    55    50  
 the 20th of March last 1741-2, at

C c 2

I find

of them are  
 nks of New-  
 much dimi-

on's Streights  
 ve taken my  
 one of them,  
 r all round it.  
 hom; and I  
 y of Ice, the  
 which was a  
 rise in a Har-  
 e I continued  
 we call them)  
 Side of one  
 Fathom Wa-  
 face but ten  
 der, and the  
 s above the

or the Aggre-  
 this: All a-  
 both Sides of  
 b, or Labra-  
 and 100 Fa-  
 These Shores  
 of which are  
 almost perfe-  
 Ground, in-  
 s, till a kind  
 only happens  
 Parts, breaks  
 Streights or  
 the variable  
 June, July,  
 minishing in  
 four or five  
 Points



I find the same Emerfion happened } h.  
 at *London*, by Mr. *Pound's* Tables, com- }  
 pared with some Emerfions actually } 18 15 10  
 obferved in *England* near the same }  
 Time at,

Whence the horary Difference of }  
 Meridians, between *Fort Cchurchill* } 6 19 20  
 and *London*, comes out - - - }  
 Which converted into Degrees of }  
 the Equator, gives for the Distance } 94° 50'  
 of the same Meridians - - - }

Wherefore, ſince the Time at *London* was later in Denomination than that at *Cchurchill*, it follows that, according to this Obſervation, *Cchurchill* is 94 Degrees 50 Minutes in Longitude weſt of *London*.

I took ſeveral other Obſervations, which agreed one with another to leſs than a Minute, but this I look upon as the moſt diſtinct and beſt.

The Obſervation was made with a good 15 Foot refracting Teſticle, and a two Foot Reſlector of *Gregory's* Kind, having a good Watch of Mr. *Graham's* that I could depend upon; for I have frequent Opportunities of diſcovering how much its Variation amounted to, and conſtantly found its daily Deviation or Error to be 15 Seconds too ſlow; by which means it was as uſeful to me for all Purpoſes, as if it had gone moſt conſtantly true without any Change. This Watch I kept in my Fob in the Day, and in Bed in the Night, to preſerve it from the Severity of the Weather; for I obſerved, that all other Watches were ſpoiled by the extreme Cold.

I have found, from repeated Obſervations, a Method of obtaining the true Time of the Day at Sea, by taking eight or ten different Altitudes of the Sun or Stars, when near the Prime Vertical, by Mr.

*Smith's*  
 practiſed  
 found fr  
 from an  
 This Ce  
 Uſe in t  
 at firſt S  
 riation  
 tudes, b  
 the tru  
 ſeen to  
 of Day  
 Altitud  
 20 Min  
 and the  
 Minute  
 Obſerva  
 and to  
 Riſing  
 doing,  
 If we  
 recomr  
 we can  
 the Da  
 a good  
 the Ec  
 other  
 find t  
 Sea.  
 The  
 Comp  
 in N<sup>o</sup>  
 Month  
 north  
 carefu  
 no m  
 about

*Smith's* or *Mr. Hadley's* Quadrant, which I have practised these three or four Years past, and never found from the Calculations, that they differed one from another more than 10 or 15 Seconds of Time. This Certainty of the true Time at Sea is of greater Use in the Practice of Navigation, than may appear at first Sight; for you thereby not only get the Variation of the Compass without the help of Altitudes, but likewise the Variation of the Needle from the true Meridian, every time the Sun or Star is seen to transit the same. Also having the true Time of Day or Night, you may be sure of the Meridian Altitude of the Sun or Star, if you get a Sight 15 or 20 Minutes before or after it passes the Meridian; and the Latitude may be obtained to less than five Minutes: With several other Uses in astronomical Observations; as the Refraction of the Atmosphere, and to allow for it, by getting the Sun's apparent Rising and Setting, which any body is capable of doing, and from thence you will have the Refraction.

If we had such a Telescope contrived as *Mr. Smith* recommends to be used on Shipboard at Sea, now we can have an exact Knowledge of the true Time of the Day or Night from the above Instruments and a good Watch, we should probably be able to observe the Eclipses of the first *Satellite* of *Jupiter*, or any other *Phenomenon* of the like Kind, and thereby find the Distance of Meridians, or Longitude at Sea.

The Variation of the Magnetic Needle, or Sea-Compass, observed by me at *Churchill* in 1725; (as in N<sup>o</sup>. 393 of the *Philosophical Transactions* for the Months of *March* and *April* 1726.) was at that time north 21 Degrees westerly, and this Winter I have carefully observed it at the same Place, and find it no more than 17 Degrees, so that it has differed about one Degree in four Years; for in 1738, I ob-

served it here, and found its Declination 18 Degrees westerly. I have carefully observed, and made proper Allowance for the Sun's Declination and Refraction, and find the Latitude here to be 58 Degrees 56 Minutes north : But in most Parts of the World, where the Latitudes are fixed by Seamen, they are for the most part falsely laid down, for want of having regard to the Variation of the Sun's Declination, which, computed at a distant Meridian, when the Sun is near the Equator, may make a great Error in the Sun's rising and setting *Azimuths*, &c.

These things I thought proper to take notice of, as they may be of Service to Navigators, and the Curious in natural Inquiries.

---

The foregoing Relation having been given by Capt. *Middleton* to the late worthy President of the ROYAL SOCIETY, Sir *Hans Sloane*, Bart. he was pleased to communicate the same to the SOCIETY, and at the same time, as the surviving Trustee of the late Sir *Godfrey Copley*, to nominate Capt. *Middleton* to receive this Year the Prize Medal, given annually by the ROYAL SOCIETY, in consequence of Sir *Godfrey's* Benefaction; and the same was accordingly presented to the Captain on St. *Andrew's* Day last, 1742.



ation 18 De-  
ed, and made  
clination and  
ere to be 58  
most Parts of  
fixed by Sea-  
ly laid down,  
riation of the  
at a distant  
Equator, may  
ng and setting

ake notice of,  
tors, and the

by Capt. Middle-  
L SOCIETY, Sir  
icate the same to  
surviving Trustee  
apt. Middleton to  
annually by the  
ey's Benefaction;  
e Captain on St.

Several

... of a ...  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..



*Several ABBREVIATIONS which are made Use of in the following Logg Journal explained.*

L. W. at the Top of Col. 2. stands for *Lee Way*, where the Numbers exprefs Degrees.

H. at the Top of Col. 3. stands for *Hours*.

K. at the Top of Col. 4. stands for *Knots*.

F. at the Top of Col. 5. stands for *Furlongs*, or the eighth Part of a Mile.

Sd. *Sounded*.

Sqs. *Squalls*.

A. M. *Ante Meridiem*, or *in the Morning*.

P. M. *Post Meridiem*, or *in the Evening*.

F. T. S. *Fore Top Sail*.

M. T. S. *Main Top Sail*.

X. Longit. Difference of Longitude.

Longitude  
from Lon-

TRANSACTIONS, &c.

Winds.

Course.

L. W. H. K. F.

Thursday,  
July 1, 1742.

which are made  
al explained.  
for Lee Way,  
rees.  
Hours.  
nots.  
rlongs, or the

ing.  
g.

Thursday,  
July 1, 1744.

L. W. H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2		
4		
6		
8		
10		
12		
2		
4	N. E. by N.	S. S. E.
6		
8		
10		
12		S. E. by S.

Obs. Lat.  
60° 00'.

Lat. by Ac.  
60° 4'.

TRANSACTIONS, &c.

Light Air, variable and moderate fair Weather.  
Ditto hazy. Made Signal to weigh.  
Ditto bore short. All clear for Sea. At half past eight weighed.  
At nine got out of the Harbour of *Charrbill* River.  
Sent the Boat on Shore with the Packet for Home. Braced to for our Boat and Tender.  
Put a Cable and one of the Tender's Anchors on Board of her, which we had borrowed for Mooring, two of our own being broken.  
At 11 our Boat returned on Board. The New Fort bore S. W. Dist. 3 Leag. Sounded 17 Fathoms. At 1 bore away, the Tender in Company.  
At 2 Do. Fort bore S. W. by W. Dist. 4 Leagues.  
Sounded 20, 15, and 24 Fathoms.  
At 5 founded 25, 26 Fathoms. Set the Forefall.  
Sounded, no Ground at 40 Fathoms. Set Top-gallant-sail. Saw several Pieces of Ice.  
Hazy Weather.

Longitude from *London*, 94° 17' W.

X. Longitude from *Charrbill*, 0° 43' E.

Variation. N. 18° W.

Wind, Weather, and Remarks as above. Our Course made from *Charrbill* Harbour's Mouth, including the Bearing and Distance as above, is N. 15° E. Distance 89 Miles. Departure 21, 9 Miles.  
And therefore Dr. River bore off at Noon, 5, 15° W. 30 Leagues 1 Mile,



*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, from Churchill towards Ne Ultra on a Discovery.*

Longitude from London 92° 42' W.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2	6	N. E. by N.	S. by E.
4	5		
6	5		
8	6		S. S. E.
10	7		
12	6		
2	5		
4	6		
11	6	E. by N.	S. E. by S.
11	8	E.	S. S. E.
11	10		
11	12	E. by N.	S. by E.

Friday, July 2d, 1742.

Obs. Lat. 62° 04'.

Latitude by Acc. 62° 01'.

Shortned Sail for Tender.  
 Ditto hazy.  
 Sounded 63 Fathoms.  
 Fresh Gales and hazy.  
 Shortned Sail for the Tender.  
 Sounded 43 Fathoms rocky. In one Reef F. T. S.  
 54 Fathoms to 50. Set Fore-sail.  
 Sounded 46 to 42 Fathoms.  
 At 5 made 3 Islands in Latitude 61° 40' the Westernmost N. W. by N. the Easternmost N. W. by N. Distance 3 Leagues. Sounded 27 Fathoms.  
 Sounded 43 Fathoms, sticking Ground.  
 Sounded 43 Fathoms, soft Ground.  
 Sounded 45 Fathoms. Up Fore-sail.

X. Longitude 18' E.

Variation N. 21° W.

Wind, Weather and Remarks as above. Our Comiss made, allowing for Lee Way and Variation, is N. 20° E. Dist. 128 Miles. Depart. 45.7 Miles. At 5 this Morning made 3 Islands, distant from us about three Leagues; being hazy, and the Wind on the Shore, we could not come any nearer, nor see the Main Land. At Noon Churchill's River's Mouth bore off us S. 21° W. Distant 65 Leagues.

Saturday July 3d.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
11	2	E.	S. S. E.
	3		
	5		

Moderate and hazy.

Ditto Sounded 45 Fathoms.

from London 91° 43' W.

By Acc. 62° 01'.

11 12 4 4 E. by N. S. by E.

Sounded 45 Fathoms. Up Fore-sail.

Variation N. 21° W.

Wind, Weather and Remarks as above. Our Course made, allowing for Lee Way and Variation, is N. 20° E. Dist. 128 Miles. Depart. 45;7 Miles. At 5 this Morning made 3 Islands, distant from us about three Leagues; being hazy, and the Wind on the Shore, we could not come any nearer, nor see the Main Land. At Noon *Cowichil* River's Mouth bore off us S. 21° W. Distance 65 Leagues.

Saturday July 3d.

Hour	Wind	Weather	Distance	Direction	Remarks
11	2	3	5	S. S. E.	Moderate and hazy.
11	4	2	6	E. N. E.	Ditto sounded 45 Fathoms.
8	6	3			Wet foggy Weather. Bore down to the Tender N. N. E. 2 Miles. Sounded 52 Fathoms. Fired 1 Gun.
15	8	1	6	E. half S.	Bore down two Glasses to ditto. Fired 6 Guns.
15	10	1	5	E. by N.	Foggy. Sounded 56 Fathoms. A great Swell from Southward.
15	12	1	2	N. E. by S.	Light Airs. Wet Fog. 4 Guns. Sounded 44 Fathoms.
22	2	1	4	N. E. by N.	Sounded 43 Fathoms. Soft Clay. 2 Guns for the Tender.
11	4	3		S. E.	At 1 tack'd. Sounded 48 Fathoms. 3 Guns for ditto. 30 Fathoms. 4 more Guns for keeping in Company.
8	6	4	3	N. E. by N.	4 Guns the 2 Hours for the Tender. Sounded from 43 to 49 Fathoms.
8	8	6	4	Ditto	1 Gun for ditto. At half an Hour past 5 tack'd. Fresh Gale.
11	10	5		E. by N.	At 6 saw Land, being an Island from N. by E. to E. by N.
11	12	1	3	N. N. E.	A fresh Gale. The E. End of the said Island bore N. E. the W. End N. by W. the nearest Distance 4 Leagues. At 10 tack'd. 15 Fathoms. Stony Ground 5 or 6 Miles off the said Island.
				R.	At Noon the Eastmost Point of the said Island bore E. the Westmost Point N. by E. the nearest Point N. N. E. 5 Miles distant.
				S. E. ½ E.	

Obs. Lat. 62° 47'.

Latit. by Acc. 62° 41'.

Since last Noon Wind and Weather for the most part variable, with wet Fogs. At 8 this Morning made an Island in Latit. 63° 00' N. and Longit. from the Meridian of *London* 91° 40'. It is very probable that this Island is what *Fox* calls *Brook Cobham*. It is about 8 Leagues long, and 3 Leagues broad. Here it is pretty bold and good Sounding. It lies near N. W. and S. E. by Compass lengthwise, Much Snow on it. My Course, Lee-way and Variation allow'd, is N. 36° E. Distance 46 Miles. Depart. 27 Miles.

At Noon *Cowichil* River bore from us S. 24° W. Dist. 83 Leagues.

from *London* 91° 43' W.

X. Longitude 3° 17' E.

Variation. N. 25° W.

*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, from Churchill towards Ne Ultra on a Discovery.*  
**TRANSACTIONS. &c.**

Longitude  
from Lon-  
don 89°  
55' W.

Sunday,  
July 4th.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
15	2 1	4 S. by E.	N. E. by E.
	4		Calm.
	6 1	3 E. by S.	W. N. W.
	8 1 3	E.	
	10 3	E. by N.	
	12 3 2		N. N. W.
	2 3 3	E. N. E.	N.
	11 4 3 3		
	5 6 3 4	E.	N. N. E.
	11 8 3 2	E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.	
	10 3	3 S. E. by E.	
	28 12 1	4 E. by N.	N. by E.

Obs. Lat.  
62° 58'.

Latit. by  
Acc. 63°  
02'.

Almost calm. At half past 12 sounded 29, 31, 34 Fathoms. At 2 the E. End of Brook Cobham bore N. E. by E. Dist. 4 or 5 Leagues.  
 At 4 the S. End of ditto bore N. E. half E. Dist. 5 Leagues. Sold dead Mens Clothes.  
 Sounded 35 Fathoms. At 6 the E. End of ditto bore N. E. 7 or 8 Miles distant. The Northmost Point N. by W. distant 8 or 9 Leagues. Sounded 30 Fathoms, soft Ground.  
 At 8 sounded 33, 35, 40 Fathoms, ditto Ground. Light Airs and smooth Water.  
 Sounded 40 Fathoms, ditto Ground.  
 Out 1 Reef of the Top-sail. Sounded 45, 46 Fathoms. At 12 the Island bore W. S. W. 7 or 8 Leagues. Set the Fore-sail and Stay-sails.  
 A fine Gale and smooth Water. Sounded 54, 55 Fathoms Water.  
 Fair Weather. Sounded 52, 60 Fathoms.  
 Ditto fair and pleasant. At half past five set Main-sail. Sounded 60 Fathoms.  
 Cloudy hazy Weather. At 7 up Main-sail for the Tender. Sounded 75, 74 Fathoms.  
 Ditto Weather. Bore down to the Tender 5 Glasses.  
 A small Breeze, and clear Weather.

X. Longi-  
tude 6°  
05' E.

Variation  
obf.  
N. 27° W.

We have had chiefly light Gales, and variable Weather.  
 At Noon Churchill River's Mouth bore S. 33° W. Dist. 95 Leagues.  
 Our Course, Lee-way and Variation allowed, is E. 20° N. Dist. 54 Miles. Depart. 51 Miles.

Long. 90°  
50' W.

Ditto Sounded 80 Fathoms.

22	2 1	3 E. by N.	N. by E.
22	4 1	E. N. E.	N.

N. 27° W.

We have had chiefly light Gales, and variable Weather. Our Course, Lee-way and Variation allowed, is E. 20° N. Dist. 54 Miles. Depart. 51 Miles. At Noon Churchhill River's Mouth bore S. 33° W. Dist. 95 Leagues.

( 5 )

22	2	1	3	E. by N.	N. by E.
22	4	1		E. N. E.	N.
22	6		4	E. B. S.	N. N. E.
23	8	1			
28	10	2	6	N. W. by W.	N. E. by N.
28	12	2	6		
28	2	2	6	N. b. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.	
22	4	1	7	N. by W.	N. E. by E.
28	6	1	4		
22	5	1	6	N. b. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.	
11	10	2		N. W. by N.	
11	12	2			

Obs. Lat. 63° 14'.  
 Latit. by Acc. 63° 14'.  
 Variation observed N. 30° W.

Dit. from Churchhill River 4° 10' E.

Light Airs, and fair Weather.

Ditto. Sounded 80 Fathoms.  
 Almost calm. Sounded 80 Fathoms.  
 A fresh Gale, and Squalls. In 1 Reef of the Top-sail. At half past 8 tack'd. 1 Gun. Handed Fore-top-sail.  
 Hazy. Set Fore-top-sail. Sounded 75 Fathoms. A great Sea from the Eastward.  
 Ditto Weather. Sounded 75 Fathoms.  
 Sounded 75 Fathoms.  
 At 3 saw a Head-land on the N. Side of the *Wellcome*. Bore N. W. by N. 7 or 8 Leagues distant. Sounded 70 Fathoms. Out all Reefs. Set small Sails.  
 Little Wind and hazy. At 5 sounded 70 Fathoms.  
 Sounded 72 Fathoms.  
 Little Wind. Sounded 60, 43 Fathoms.  
 The Westmost Part of do. Land in Sight N. W. by W. 6 or 7 Leagues. The Eastmost N. by E. 5 Leagues. Sounded 42, 35 Fathoms.

Wind, &c. as before. Our Course, allowing for Lee-way and Variation, is W. 33° N. Dist. 30 Miles. Depart. 25 Miles. Off the Head-land I tried the Tide several Times, and found it 2 Miles an Hour from N. E. by E. by Compass, one Day before the Full Moon. I take it to be the Flood from the Eastward, but have not stop'd any where to go on Shore. Sounded 23 Fathoms, 3 Leagues off Shore. Should have sent my Boat a-shore here, but find it is coming foggy. This Head-land is in Latitude 63° 20' N. Longit. from London 91° 00' W. or 4° E. from Churchhill.  
 At Noon Churchhill River's Mouth bore S. 25° W. Dist. 94 Leagues.

Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, from Churchill River towards Ne Ultra.

Tuesday, July 6th.	L. W. H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.	Moderate Weather.	Longitude from Lon- don 89°.
	11 2 2	4 N. W. by N.	N. E. by N.	Sounded 42, 40, 42, 38, 38, 35, 38, 35 Fathoms.	44° W.
	11 4 2	N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.		Ditto. At half past 2 tack'd. At half past 3 tack'd. The Eastmost Part of the Headland in Sight N. by E. The Westmost W. by S. nearest Dist. 4 or 5 Leagues.	
	( 1	N. E. by E.	N. b. W.	Working along Shore, the Flood from the N. E. by N. and Ebb from S. W. by S. Sounded 23, 33 Fathoms.	
	15 8 1	6 E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N.	N. by E.	Sounded 32 Fathoms. The Island of <i>Brook Cobham</i> is in Sight, and bears W. by S. 9 Leagues. Set up Top-gallant-sails.	
	15 10 2	3 E. by N.	N. by E.	At 10 the Eastmost Part of the Head-land in Sight bore N. W. 4 or 5 Leagues.	X. Longit. 5° 16' E.
	15 12 3	3 E.	N. N. E.	At 11 in with the Small-sails. Sounded 60 Fathoms. Moderate and clear.	
	15 2 2	3 E. by N.	N. by E.	Moderate and hazy. Sounded 73 Fathoms.	
	22 4 1	4 E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N.		Ditto Weather. At 4 founded 78 Fathoms.	
	12 ( 1	6 N. W. by W.	N. N. E.	At 5 tack'd. Sounded 78, 70 Fathoms. Lowered the small Boat, and tried the Tide, which set N. N. E. Two Fathoms at 6.	
	12 8 2	3 W. N. E.	N.	At half past 7 tack'd. Sounded 70 Fathoms. At 8 the Eastmost Part of the above Head-land W. N. W. half N. Dist. 8 or 9 Leagues.	
	11 10 1	E.	N. N. E.	Almost calm.	
	11 12 1	6 E. N. E.	N.	Hazy. Set the Top-gallant-sails, unbent the jibb, and altered the Foot to make it stand, being too deep by Leach; and scrap'd the Six-ear'd Boat.	Var. obf. N. 30° W.

Since last Noon light Airs and variable Weather. Our Course made, with the above Allowance, is E. 5° N. Dist. 31 Miles, Depart. 30 Miles. Lat. Longit. and Variation as per Margin. Close in with the before-mentioned Head-land I found the Tide run two Miles an Hour from the N. E. by E. which I take to be the Flood. By the slack Tide, from several Tryals, I found it to flow near W. or W. by N. having a full Moon this Day.

At Noon Churchill River bore S. 31° W. Dist. 99 Leagues.

the 7th.

11	2 2	N. E.	N. N. W.
4	2	N. N. E.	W. N. W.

Ditto. Sounded 65 Fathoms.

Var. 88°  
38' W.

Var. obl.  
N. 30° W.

Set the Top-gilliant-falls, unbent the Jib, and altered the Foot to make it stand, being too deep by Leach; and scarp'd the St-oar'd Boat.

Acc. 63° 16'	11	12	1	E. N. E.	N.
--------------	----	----	---	----------	----

Since last Noon light Airs and variable Weather. Our Course made, with the above Allowance, is E. 5° N. Dist. 31 Miles. Depart. 30 Miles. Lat. Longit. and Variation as per Margin. Close in with the before-mentioned Head-land I found the Tide run two Miles an Hour from the N. E. by E. which I take to be the Flood. By the slack Tide, from several Tryals, I found it to flow near W. or W. by N. having a full Moon this Day.

At Noon Char-bill/ River bore S. 31° W. Dist. 99 Leagues.

the 7th.	11	2	2	N. E.	N. N. W.
	4	3	2	N. N. E.	W. N. W.
	5	6	3	E. by S.	N. E. by N.
	11	8	3		
	5	10	2	E. by S. 1/2 S.	
	8	12	2	N. by W.	N. E. by E.
	5	2	3	N.	E. N. E.
	12	4	2	S. E. by E.	N. E. by E.
	12	6	1	E. S. E.	N. E.
	11	8	1		
	11	10	2	E.	N. N. E.
	11	12	1	E. by N	N. by E.

Latit. by  
Acc. 63° 39'

Very foggy Weather for the most Part, with light Gales. Our Course made, allowing for Lee-way and Variation, is E. 38° N. Dist. 38 Miles. Depart. 30 Miles. I have tried the Tides several Times since I was in Shore off *Brock Cobles*, and find little or none. This may be owing to the Distance from the Land, as we find it in other Places. I have seen no Whales, nor large Fish of any Sort as yet, except one white Whale, no bigger than a Crampus, and four or five Seals.

At Noon Char-bill/ River bore S. 32° W. Dist. 110 Leagues.

Lat. 58° 38' W.

Ditto. Sounded 65 Fathoms.  
Ditto, and wet and foggy. Sounded 60 Fathoms.  
Ditto, foggy. Sounded from 70 to 75 Fathoms.  
Ditto, foggy. Sounded 70 Fathoms. 1 Gun. Tack'd, Sounded 68 Fathoms.  
Ditto, foggy. Sounded 70 Fathoms.  
At half past 1 tack'd. 1 Gun. Sounded 60 Fathoms.  
Hazy. Cleared up a little. Shortened Sail for the Tender. Sounded 78, 76, 73 Fathoms.  
Ditto, hazy. Soft sticking Ground. 72, 70 Fathoms.  
Ditto. 71, 73 Fathoms. Soft Ground.  
Ditto, hazy. Sounded 85, 90 Fathoms.  
Ditto. Sounded 90 Fathoms. Hazy light Airs. Wind.

X. Longitude 6° 22' E.

Variation N. 31° W.



*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, from Churchill towards Ne Ultra.*  
**T R A N S A C T I O N S, &c.**

Thursday,  
July 8th.

L. W.	H.	K.	F.	Course.	Winds.
5	2	1	5	E. N. E.	N.
5	4	2	5	N. E.	N. N. W.
5	6	3		E. b. N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N.	N. by E.
5	8	2	6		
5	10	2		E. by N.	N.
5	12	2		E. by S.	N. E. by N.
5	2	1	6	N. by W.	N. E. by E.
3	4	1			Calm.
			8		ditto.
			10		ditto.
			12	4	

Latit. obf.  
63° 55'.

Latit. by  
Acc. 64°  
04'.

Longitude  
from Lon-  
don 88°  
00' W.

X. Longit.  
7° 00' E.

( 00 )

Variation  
obf. 34°  
W.

Hazy. Little Wind. Sounded 92 Fathoms. Soft.  
 Ditto. Sounded 90 Fathoms.  
 Saw a large Ledge of Ice to the Northward of us. Sounded 82, 83 Fathoms.  
 Ditto, and hazy. Sounded 82 Fathoms, soft Ground.  
 Ditto. Sounded 83 Fathoms. Ditto Ground.  
 Ditto. Sounded 83, 88 Fathoms. Tack'd at 12.  
 Light Air. Sounded 80 Fathoms to 74.

Almost calm. Saw the N. Side of the *Williams*, and much Ice in Shore. The near-  
 est Part of the Land N. W. about 7 or 8 Leagues.

Tried the Tide; it set E. N. E. 2 Fathoms.

Light Air. Hazy. Exercised our small Arms. The Westmost Land on the N. Side  
 N. W. The nearest Distance 7 or 8 Leagues. Sounded at Noon 57 Fathoms.

Have had for the most part little Wind. Weather hazy with Calms, and much Ice all to the Northward of us, close in Shore for several Leagues off. Our Course, al-  
 lowing Lee-way and Variation, is N. 32° E. Dist. 30 Miles. Depart. 16, 7 Miles.  
 At Noon *Churchill* Beyer bore S. 35° W. Dist. 120 Leagues. Sailing 5 Leagues off Shore, which lyeth E. by N. in 38 Fathoms.

Friday,  
July 9th.

	2	1	5	E. by N.	W. N. W.
			5	E. by S.	

Sailing along a Ledge of Ice. Sounded 72 Fathoms.  
 Altered our Course for Ice. 1 Gun. Shortened Sail.

from Lon-  
don, 86°  
00' W.



*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.*  
**TRANSACTIONS, &c.**

Longitude  
 from Lon-  
 don 86°.  
 10'. W.

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2			
2		N. by W.	S. W. by W.
6			
10			
12			
4			
6			
8			
10			S. W. by S.
12			

Obs. Lat.  
 63° 05'

Latitude  
 by Acc.  
 63° 01'

X. Long.  
 from  
 Churchill  
 R. 8°.  
 50' E.

Variation  
 N. 35° W.

Up S. E. by S. off E. S. E. Weather foggy. At half past 1 the Fog clear'd up a little. Made sail towards the N. Shore amongst falling Ice. Much Ice all round.  
 At 2 founded 65 Fathoms. Tried the Tide. Set N. E. by E. 1 Mile and Hour. At 4 made Signal to grapple to the Ice. Fired 2 Guns.  
 At 5 grappled both Ship and Tender to one large Piece, to keep off from the Lee Shore, the Wind blowing on the South Side.

At 8 set the Land on both Sides of the *Williams*, the E. Shore or South, from S. S. E. round to N. E. by E. the W. or N. Shore from W. to N. the nearest Diff. 6 or 7 Leagues. The S. Side dist. 5 Leagues. Filled all our empty Casks with fresh Water, gathered from off the Ice we were grappled to.

Same Rain, and foggy. Sounded 38 Fathoms.

Fair but hazy. A fresh Gale at S. W. by S. driving all the Ice we came through upon us, joined all fast to both Shores. Sounded 56 Fathoms.

At 4 founded 46, 45 Fathoms.

At 5 founded 49 Fathoms. At 6 founded 51 Fathoms. Fresh Gales and hazy.

At 8 got down Top-gallant Yards. Sounded 50 Fathoms.

Sounded 53 Fathoms. Ditto hazy, and fresh Gales.

Sounded 55 Fathoms.

Have had for the most Part hazy and foggy Weather. Inclosed among much heavy Ice. We are using Means to prevent being forc'd on Shore, by making fast to the largest Piece we have been able to come at, and thereby hinder our separating. By frequent Tryals with the Current Loggs, I cannot perceive either Flood or Ebb to run here on the South Side. Our Way made by driving in the Ice with the Wind, allowing Variation, is N. E. about 15 Miles. Our Latit. and Longit. as above. So hazy that we cannot see the West Shore. The East Shore is from S. by W. to N. by E. in Sight. We drive E. N. E. by Compass, and are not above 3 Leagues from the Eastern Shore, but hope the Ice will fill between us and it, to prevent our being on the Shore; for we are not able to help ourselves, till the Wind shifts or falls calm.

July 11.

The Current set N. E. by E. 4 Fathoms. Sounded 47. At 2 founded 54 Fathoms.

Sounded 47, 45 Fathoms.

from Lon-  
 don 85°.  
 45'. W.

by Acc.  
65° 01'.

Sounded 55 Fathoms.

Variation  
N. 36° W.

Have had for the most part hazy and foggy weather. Inclosed among much heavy ice. We are using means to prevent being fore'd on Shore, by making fast to the largest Piece we have been able to come at, and thereby hinder our separating. By frequent Tryals with the Current Loggs, I cannot perceive either Flood or Ebb to run here on the South Side. Our Way made by driving in the Ice with the Wind, allowing Variation, is N. E. about 15 Miles. Our Latit. and Longit. as above. So hazy that we cannot see the West Shore. The East Shore is from S. by W. to N. by E. in Sight. We drive E. N. E. by Compass, and are not above 3 Leagues from the Eastern Shore, but hope the Ice will fill between us and it, to prevent our being on the Shore; for we are not able to help ourselves, till the Wind shifts or falls calm.

July 11.

2					
4					
6		S. S. W.			
8		S. W.			
10		Ditto			
12		Ditto			
2		Ditto.			
4					
6					
8					
10					
12					

Lat. obs.  
65° 11'.

C  
N

Latit. by  
Acc. dit.

The Current set N. E. by E. 4 Fathoms. Sounded 47. At 2 sounded 54 Fathoms.

Sounded 47, 45 Fathoms.

A fresh Gale, and hazy at 4.

Ditto hazy. Sounded 48, 44 Fathoms.

Sounded 44, 45 Fathoms. Continued driving in on the S. Shore. Foggy.

Sounded 46, 44 Fathoms. A wet Fog.

Foggy. Sounded 43, 42, stony and rocky Ground.

A thick wet Fog and Rain. Sounded 43 Fathoms.

Wet Fog Sounded 43, 40 Fathoms, rocky and stony.

A very thick Fog and Rain. At 7 sounded 38 Fathoms. Tide sets N.N.E. 4 Fathoms.

At 10 the Tide set E. 6 Fathoms. Sounded 28 Fathoms. At same Time cleared up a little. Found ourselves within 2 Miles of the S. Shore. It pleased God that it came calm, and the Ice opened as usually it does. We warp'd off from the Shore, by carrying out Wars and Grapplings over the Ice, fastening the Grapplings to a Piece of Ice. The Tender did the same.

Have had fresh Gales and Calms by Turns, with Rain and wet Fogs. Much Ice in the *Whelms*: all round, and from Side to Side, and for ten Leagues to the Windward of us. It is now calm, and we are working from the Shores, and can make but little Way till the Wind shifts to favour us. Our Drift since the last Noon, when Variation is allowed, has been 15 Miles N. E. making us in Latit. and Longit. as *per* Margin. At Noon being calm, we are using all possible Means to get from the Shores; the Tide setting constantly to the Eastward, we shall endeavour to get over towards *Whalbone Point*, to try for a Strait or Passage, according to my Instructions, as soon as Ice and Wind will permit.

X. Long.  
from  
*Churchill*  
R 9°  
05' E.

Variation.  
N. 36° W.

( 51 )

from  
diaz 85°  
45° W.

*Remarkable Observations on Board His Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.*

Longitude<sup>s</sup>  
from Lon-  
don 85°  
55' W.

X. Longi-  
tude 9°  
05' E.

Variation  
cbf.  
N. 36° W.

Monday, July 12.	L. W.	H. K. F.	Contc.	Winds.
	2			
	4			
	6	4	N. N. W.	N. E.
	8	1		
	10			
	11	4		
	2			
	4	1	N. N. E.	E.
	6			E. S. E.
	8			E.
	10	3	4	
	11	3	4	

Monday,  
July 12.

Obf. Lat  
65° 30'

Latit. by  
Acc. dit.

T R A N S A C T I O N S. &c.

Continue warping and sailing among the Ice without Poles, being quite calm.

Ditto. Sounded 31 Fathoms.

An Air. Set the Stay-falls. Up Top Gallant-yards. Set the Sails. Rowing, warping, and setting the Ice opened. Towing with our Boat a-head.

Ice opened more. Continued as above.

At 9 grappled to stay for our Tender 5 Miles off Shore. This E. Side lyeth by Com- pass N. N. E. and S. S. W. low even land.

At 11 cast off our Grapplings, and made sail. The Tender came up with us.

At 2 grappled to a large Piece. A thick Fogg coming on, sent our Boat to help the Tender to the same. By three got her fast to it also.

Sounded 35, 38 Fathoms. Foggs.

Foggy. Sounded 39 Fathoms, driving N. E. 2 Fathoms.

At half past 7 cast off our Grapplings. Clear'd up a little. Made one warp. Set Sails. By 8 the Ice opened towards the North Shore.

Sailing amongst shattered Ice over for the N. Shore. Sounded 43 Fathoms, half Way between the two Shores.

Sounded 49, 48, 46 Fathoms, grey Sand and Shells, with some Stones; A fair Head-land on the N. Shore, bore S. W. by S. The Eastmost Land on ditto Shore N. E. the nearest high 4 Leagues.

Wind, Weather, &c. as per Logg. Our Way made, allowing for working among the Ice, is N. 11° W. Dist. 21 Miles; Depart. 4 Miles; therefore Latitude and Longitude as above. At Noon a fair Point, Cape, or Head-land appeared on the North Shore to the Northward of *Waldstone Point*, which bore from us 8 or 9 Leagues, as above in Latitude 65° 10' N. and Longit. from *London* by Account 86° 06' W. which I shall name *Cape Dobbs*. And now we are standing in for an Inlet or Strait, which makes a fair Opening N. W. from us; though not very wide, to secure our Ships from the continual Danger they must be exposed to by lying in the *Wellcome*, or proceeding any further until the Ice is gone; and if this cannot be done, we must forthwith return.

July 13.

2	3	2	N. by W.	E. N. E.
4	3		N. N. W.	

Foggy. Sounded 48 Fathoms, grey Shells, and small Stones. Cape Dobbs bore from us 8 or 9 Leagues, as above in Latitude 65° 10' N. and Longit. from *London* by Account 86° 06' W. which I shall name *Cape Dobbs*. And now we are standing in for an Inlet or Strait, which makes a fair Opening N. W. from us; though not very wide, to secure our Ships from the continual Danger they must be exposed to by lying in the *Wellcome*, or proceeding any further until the Ice is gone; and if this cannot be done, we must forthwith return.

by S. 7 or 8 Leagues. The Eastmost Land on the N. Side of the Opening E. N. E. which makes this Bay 8 or 9 Leagues. The Entrance of the River N. W. by W. 4 Leagues.





Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, in North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

Wednesday, July the 14th.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2			S. S. E.
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			

Light Airs. Fair moderate Weather.

At 4 weighted our best Bower Anchor to get into a better Road, within some Islands, and found it broke, one Arm being gone. We went about four Miles higher up, and anchored in a Sound between some Islands and the N. Main, in 16 Fathoms; and moor'd with our broken Anchor near those Islands.

The Tender got in to anchor by us. Much Ice continues driving along by us, several Pieces coming foul of us; but the Tide's Run is small here, being more Eady than Tide. We drew the best Bower-splice, and shifted it from the Starboard to the Larboard Side. At 7 sent away the Lieutenant with the eight-our'd Boat, and nine Men, with Provisions for 48 Hours, to discover this River, and to observe the Course, Height, and Direction of the Tides. I sent the three *Indians* with them, to try if they knew any Part of the Land, or Country thereabouts.

These 24 Hours have had little Wind; but much Ice driving down the River on the Ebb. The River above, as far as we can see, is full of it from Side to Side. Many of the Savages came on Board us. I gave them Toys; but they had nothing to trade besides their old Clothes, and about 20 Gallons of Train-Oil, which we took of them for the Carpenters and Boatwains Use.

July 25.  
Our People employed in faving the Cables to fast them from the Ice, which drives in

The 24 Hours have had little Wind; but much Ice driving down the River on the Ebb. The River above, as far as we can see, is full of it from Side to Side. Many of the Savages came on Board us. I gave them Toys; but they had nothing to trade besides their old Clothes, and about 20 Gallons of Train-Oil, which we took of them for the Carpenters and Boatwains Use.

		S. E. by S.	
July 15.	2		Our People employed in faving the Cables to save them from the Ice, which drives in and out with the Tides.
	4		Fresh Gales and cloudy.
	6		Ditto.
	8		
	10	E. S. E.	Set our Fishing-nets, but took nothing. I went on Shore, and found the Rocks quite bare, except in some few Places. In the Valleys a little short Grass and Moss. A little Scurry-grass amongst the Stones near High-water Mark. Also some Sorrel, which we brought on Board for our sick Men. No Bush nor Tree of any Kind.
	12		
	2		
	4		
	6		
	8		
	10		Fresh Gales at E. S. E. This Wind has driven the Ice out of the <i>Wellcome</i> into the River, and quite filled it.
	12		

Many of our Men are very bad of their old Discafes, the Scurvey. Those who were on the *Recovery*, when we came from *Charbill*, are grown worse again, so that one half of them are unserviceable.

Friday,  
July 16.

*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, North America.*  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2			E. S. E.
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			S E. by E.
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			

A fresh Gale, and hazy, Our People busy in coiling down the Cable in the Hold, and getting the spare ditto to coil between Decks.

At 3 returned on board, got down the Top-gallant Yards.

Bent the best Bower Cable to that which was our spare Anchor. Much Ice driving down the River.

Fresh Gale. Lowered our lower Yards a Port-land. Got the Boat up in the Tackles along-side.

Hard Gale and Rain.

Ditto.

More moderate. Got up the Lower-Yards, and cleared the Decks.

Loosed our Sails a Jy.

Fair and clear.

Ditto.

Our People employed in drawing and knotting Yarns.

Latit. obs.  
65° 36'.

Wind, Weather, &c. as per Logg. This Wind forces all the Ice which is out at Sea into the River. I find that on the Fall and Change Days the Tide in the Mouth of this River flows 5 Hours, and from 10 to 15 feet Water. The Flood without comes from the East by Compass the Courfe of the Land; but in the Mid-channel E. N. E. by ditto, when I was with the Boat on shore. I found a good Cove 10 or 12 Fathoms Water in it, about 2 Miles from where we now lye, fit to secure our Ship: from the Ice before the Spring-tides come on. Where we now are, we are obliged to keep all Hands up during the whole Ebb, and sending off the Ice with Pole-

July 17.

At 1 P. M. the Lieutenant with the three *Indians* returned, having been up the River, as the Ice would permit them; all above being fast from Side to Side. He found good Soundings in the Channel, 70 or 80 Fathoms. He likewise tried the Tides, and found that the Flood came from S. - - -

Our People employed in drawing and knotting Yarns.

Wind, Weather, &c. as per Logg. This Wind forces all the Ice which is out at Sea into the River. I find that on the Fall and Change Days the Tide in the Mouth of this River flows 5 Hours, and from 10 to 45 Feet Water. The Flood without comes from the East by Compass the Couric of the Land; but in the Mid-channel E. N. E. by ditto, when I was with the Boat on shore. I found a good Cove 10 or 12 Fathoms Water in it, about 2 Miles from where we now lye, fit to secure our Ship: from the Ice before the Spring-tides come on. Where we now are, we are obliged to keep all Hands up during the whole Ebb, and sending off the Ice with Pole

July 27.

At 3 P. M. the Lieutenant with the three *Indians* returned, having been up the River, as the Ice would permit them; all above being fast from Side to Side. He found good Sounding in the Channel, 70 or 80 Fathoms. He likewise tried the Tides, and found that the Flood came from S. up the River. I am preparing to go up that Way myself, to try if any other Outlet into the Sea or *Wlloose* can be found. He observed the Tide to flow 13 Feet, being Neap Tides. The three *Indians* knew nothing of these Parts.

The River still continues full of Ice.

At 6 made a Signal to unmoor. Fired 3 Guns.

At 8 unmoor'd. Got out Wares to warp the Ship into the Cove I mentioned above, to secure her from the Ice before the Spring-tides put in.

Warping through amongst the Ice. The Discovery's Warp-anchor broke. Set the Fore-top-sail. A small Breeze.

At six this Morning I went away with the Boat and 3 Hands, and took the two Northern *Indians* with me. I ordered the Ship into the Cove, to keep clear of the Ice.

*Reverendable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, in North America.*  
**TRANSACTIONS, &c.**

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2		E. S. E.
	4		
	6		
	8		
	10		
	12		
	2		
	4		
	6		
	8		
	10		
	12		

At 2 P. M. got the Ship into the Cove, Anchor'd and moor'd in 9 and half Fathoms.

The Master and 8 Men got the Tender into the Cove, moor'd by the Ship. Served all our Ropes two or three Fathoms under Water, to keep the Ice from rubbing them.

Fine moderate clear Weather. Our People employed in scraping the Outside for tarring.

By 8 this Morning got 15 Miles up the River, and found the Tide flowed 14 Feet, and that a West Moon makes a full Sea. The Flood comes in at the Mouth of the River where we entered, from the S. S. E. Our *Indians* killed 1 small Deer this Evening. At the Place where we lay, we heard several of the *Savages* in the Night making the same odd Noises as they usually do when they see Strangers: But none of them came near us.

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2		
			S S E

A small Breeze, with fine clear Weather. Our People employed as above.  
 Ditto Weather. Paving the Ship's Outside with Tar.

Monday,  
 July 19.

**TRANSACTIONS, &c.**

By 8 this Morning got 15 Miles up the River, and found the Tide flowed 12 Feet, and that a West Moon makes a full Sea. The Flood comes in at the Mouth of the River where we entered, from the S. E. Our Indians killed 1 small Deer this Evening. At the Place where we lay, we heard several of the Serages in the Night making the same odd Noises as they usually do when they see Strangers: But none of them came near us.

Monday, July 19.	L. W. H. S. E. P. Con. S. E.	W. S. E. E.	TRANSACTIONS, &c.
2			A small Breeze, with fine clear Weather. Our People employed as above.
4		S. S. E.	Ditto Weather. Paying the Ship's Outside with Tar.
6			Ditto.
8			Ditto.
10			Ditto, moderate.
12			Ditto.
2			Ditto.
4			Ditto, hazy Weather.
6			Ditto, with some Rain.
8			The People employ'd in drawing and knotting Yarns.
10			Stayed the Fore and Main Top Mast, and set up the Rigging.
12			

At a this Morning got all our Things into the Boat, and went up five Miles higher. We are about 24 Miles from the Ships, in a small River or Sound, about six or 7 Miles broad; but how far it may go in Land we know not. The main River is here 6 or 7 Leagues broad; but so full of Ice, that we cannot get up much higher at present. All very high Land on both Sides. This River runs nearly N. by W. by Compass, from three Leagues below the Ships. I went upon a higher Hill than any I have seen in England to take a View, and perceived the River grow narrower and narrower 8 or 10 Leagues higher; but being at such a Distance, and the Ice lying so thick as not well to admit of our proceeding further. We got 5 other Deer we had killed into the Boat, and prepared to return to our Ships.



*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, North America.*  
TRANSACTIONS. &c.

Tuesday, July 20.	L. W.	H. K. F.	Courfe.	Winds.
	2			
	4			E. N. E.
	6			
	8			
	10			
	12			
	2			
	4			N. N. W.
	6			
	8			
	10			
	12			

Some of our People employed about the Rigging ; and the rest filling Water.

Much Ice. The Place where our Ships lay before we got them into the Cove is quite full of it.

Variable Weather.

At half past 8 returned on board, and brought six Deer with us, which the Indians had shot whilst we were making Observations.

A small Breeze, and hazy.

At 5 all Hands at work in clearing the Ice off our Ropes.

The People employed in scraping the Masts, &c. At 7 I went down the River, to try if I could find any Place to harbour the Ships in near the River's Mouth, in case we should be taken short in going out ; and to see if the *Willow* was any Thing cleared of Ice.

I returned on Board, and brought the Deer as above. Gave Part to the Tender, and the rest to our sick People gratis, or over-and-above their Allowance. It was very strange, that in this Sickness, even a Day or two before they died, they would eat their whole Allowance, and a great deal more if they could get it. I found the Land where I was on Shore very bare, scarce any Thing but Rocks of the Marble kind. But in the Valleys there are many large fresh Lakes, a good deal of Grass, and great Plenty of Deer. Upon the least Island that can be seen, there are not less than 4 or 6 Deer, each as big as a Horse of 12 or 13 Hands high ; the aforesaid little River I therefore named *Deer Sound*. Here are also Store of Ducks, and other Water-fowl. We saw some Whales in this Sound.

Wednesday,  
July 21.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Courfe.	Winds.
2			N. N. W.
4			

Clear Weather. Our People employed about the Ship's Rigging and Masts.

Ditto.

I returned on Board, and brought the Deer as above. Gave Part to the Tender, and the rest to our sick People *gzziti*, or over-and-above their Allowance. It was very strange, that in this Sickness, even a Day or two before they died, they would eat their whole Allowance, and a great deal more if they could get it. I found the Land where I was on Shore very bare, scarce any Thing but Rocks of the Marble kind. But in the Valleys there are many large fresh Lakes, a good deal of Grass, and great Plenty of Deer. Upon the least Island that can be seen, there are not less than 4 or 6 Deer, each as big as a Horse of 12 or 13 Hands high; the aforesaid little River I therefore named *Deer Sound*. Here are also Store of Ducks, and other Water-fowl. We saw some Whales in this Sound.

Monday,  
July 21.

	N.	N.	W.
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			

Clear Weather. Our People employed about the Ship's Rigging and Masts.

Ditto.

Cleared away the Ice from our Cables.

Ditto.

Ditto, fair.

Ditto.

Ditto.

Ditto.

At 4 A. M. I got on Board with the Boat, had great Difficulty in getting her into the Cove for Ice. The Bay and Cove quite full.

Our People employed in setting and mending the Quarter-netting.

Ditto Weather.

At 4 this Morning got on Board with the Boat, in great Hazard of staving her with the Ice, in the strong Tide. No getting out to Sea till the Ice is clear in the River. The Bay or *Welleme* is also full as yet. I got down within 4 Miles of the River's Mouth along the North Side, but could not come near the South Side for Ice. I got up on as high a Hill as I could see thereabouts, and plainly perceived the *Welleme* almost full of Ice from Side to Side.

**Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, North America.**  
**TRANSACTIONS, &c.**

L.W.	H.	K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2				N. N. E.
4				
6				
8				
10				
12				
2				
4				
6				
8				
10				
12				

A small Breeze, with some small Rain.

Ditto Weather. Hove taught the Mooting, and cleared away the Ice,

Fair Weather. Tarr'd the lower Masts and Pumps.

Ditto.

Ditto, fair,

Ditto.

Ditto.

Ditto.

At 6 A.M. loosed all the Sails to air them. At 7 some small Rain,

Got up the Top-gallant Yards.

Thursday,  
July 22.

The Ice continues very thick in the River, as far as we can see above and below. And more drives in every Tide, when the Wind blows any Way from the *Westward*.

July 23.

N. N. W.

Hazy. A small Breeze.

Ditto, and some Rain.

The Ice continues very thick in the River, as far as we can see above and below. And more drives in every Tide, when the Wind blows any Way from the *W. S. W.*

July 23.

2	N. N. W.
4	
6	
8	
10	N.
12	
2	
4	
6	N. N. E.
8	
10	
12	N. by E.

Hazy. A small Breeze.

Ditto, and some Rain,

Ditto.

Ditto.

Fair, but hazy.

Put more Service on our Cables, to save them from the Ice.

Hazy, with frequent Showers.

More Ice in the River than I have yet seen. No hedging with the Boat downwards any Distance.

Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2		N. by W.
	4		
	6		
	8		
	10		
	12		
	2		
	4		
	6		
	8		
	10		
	12		

Fresh Gales, and much Rain.

More moderate. Small Rain.

Our People employed about our Rigging, and filling of Water.

Ditto.

Ditto.

Ditto.

Ditto.

Ditto.

At 6 A.M. the Lieutenant returned with the Boat, having been gone 48 Hours to  
found above amongst the Islands near Deer Sound.

The River as full of Ice as ever, down as far as we can see.

Have had Wind, Weather, &c. as above. The Lieutenant brought on Board with him three Deer the *Indians* had killed. Divided them between the Ship's Compe-  
nies for the Sick and Officers, as before.

July 25.

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2		N.
	4		

A small Breeze, with hazy Weather. The Stock of our best Bower we found to be  
broken with the Ice grounding upon it in 4 Fathoms. This is the same Anchor whose  
Arm was broken before; so now being useless, put it a-board the Tender.

Have had Wind, Weather, &c. as above. The Lieutenant brought on Board with him three Deer the *Indians* had killed. Divided them between the Ship's Companies for the Sick and Officers, as before.

July 25.

	N.
2	
4	
6	
8	
10	
12	
2	
4	
6	
8	
10	
12	

A small Breeze, with hazy Weather. The Stock of our best Bower we found to be broken with the Ice grounding upon it in 4 Fathoms. This is the same Anchor whose Arm was broken before; so now being useless, put it a-board the Tender.

Got one of the Tender's Anchors for our Use, which had been much bent at *Charvill*, and new stock'd it.

Our People employed in making Plats for our Cables.

At 10 I sent the Lieutenant and Master of the *Fernace* down to the Mouth of the River, to see if the Ice was any clearer below, and in the *Willow*; and if we could get out before the Spring Tides put in; also to try if they could find any Cove or Harbour near the Entrance, fit to receive the Ships.



Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

Monday,  
July 26.

L. W. H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.	N.
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			

Hazy Weather. Moderate Gale,

Ditto.

The Anchor above-mentioned being completely stopt, got it over the Side, and tarred it. The Weight of it 7 C. 03 qrs. 00 lb.

The River continues very full of Ice, as far as we can see, from Side to Side. The Wind blows almost right out. The Longitude of the Place, where we now lie, and which from the Natives coming to us there, I shall call *Savage Sound*, is by Account from the Meridian of *London* 87° 28' W.

And to the Eastward of *Uniribit*  
The Variation of the Compa's several Times observed  
Latitude of the Entrance of *Wager River*

7° 32' E.  
35° 00' W.  
6° 0' 21' N.

July 27.

N. by E.

Small Breezes, and hazy.

Hoisted up our Sheet Cable, and got our Stream Cable at Hand, for the above-mentioned

The River continues very full of Ice, as far as we can see, from Side to Side. The Wind blows almost right out. The Longitude of the Place, where we now lye, and which from the Natives coming to us there, I shall call *Savage Sound*, is by Account from the Meridian of *London*

7°. 32'. E.  
35°. 00' W.  
68°. 24' N.

And to the Eastward of *Cowhill*  
The Variation of the Compass several Times observed  
Latitude of the Entrance of *Wager River*

July 27.

	N.	by	E.
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			
2			
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			

Small Bretzes, and hazy.

Hauled up our Sheet Cable, and got our Stream Cable at Hand, for the abovementioned Anchor.

At half past 9 the Lieutenant and Master returned on Board, and gave an Account that the River was much choak'd up with Ice, quite out to Sea; that they were in great Danger of losing the Boat and themselves with the strong Tides: For being jamn'd up fast in Ice, they were carried along with it six or seven Leagues out of the River by the Strength of the Tide, several great Pieces overfetting upon one another. When they were got into the *Wellcome* the Tide was easy, and the Ice thinner. They rowed round to the N. Shore, and got in again upon the Flood, with some Damage to the eight-oar'd Boat.

Got up our spare Sails, and aired them.

By the above Account there can be no getting out with the Ships before the River is much clearer: And if we were out, there is still so much Ice in the *Wellcome*, and to the Northward, that there could be no proceeding further upon the Discovery. So I hope there will be no Time lost by our remaining in Safety here a little longer.

Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

Wednes-  
day,  
July 28.

L.W.	H.	K.	F.	Course.	Winds.
	2				
	4				
	6				
	8				
	10				
	12				
	2				S.
	4				
	6				
	8				
	10				
	12				

At 1 the Lieutenant and Master went up the River, to try if they could find any Way out of it into the *Wellcome*, besides that we came in at; because they saw several black Whales, and other Fish, the last Time they were up, whereas none have been seen where we lie. Also to examine *Deer Sound*, and every Opening, to see if the Flood comes in any other Way than by that where we entered. This may be done, as there is no going out till the Ice is in some Degree cleared away, both from the River and the *Wellcome*.

At 6 this Morn. sent the Boat with 8 of our sick Men, and several lame of the Scurvy, to an Island about 5 Miles off, where Scurvy-grass and Sorrel grows in Plenty, and left them there with Tenting and other Necessaries.

This Tide flowed here 12 Foot and half; and I have not observed above 15 Foot on the highest Tide since we have been here.

*Thursday, July 29,* I went up on the highest Hill about the Place where we lay, as I have done every Day since I harboured in this Cove, to observe if the Ice was any Thing cleared; but found it all full below; though above us it thins a little. Our People making Plans for our Cables. The Tide flowed to Day 13 Feet. High-water at 1 o' Clock in the Afternoon. Variable Wind all round the Compass.

July 30.

	2				
--	---	--	--	--	--

At half past 1 flowed 12 Feet 8 Inches. Weather fair and hazy.

People employed in making Plans.

Thursday, July 29, I went up on the highest Hill about the Place where we lay, as I have done every Day since I harboured in this Cove, to observe if the Ice was any Thing cleared; but found it all full below; though above us it thins a little. Our People making Plats for our Cables. The Tide flowed to Day 13 Feet. High-water at 1 o' Clock in the Afternoon. Variable Wind all round the Compass.

highest Tide since we have been here.

July 30.

2			At half past 1 flowed 12 Feet 8 Inches. Weather fair and hazy.
4			People employed in making Platts.
6	w. b. n.		
8	Ditto		
10			Variable and light Airs.
12	n.		Ditto.
2			The Tide flowed 13 Feet and half.
4	Ditto.		
6	Ditto		
8			At 8 got our Head Anchor ready to get out of the Cove. The Ice pretty thin without in the Sear.
10			I went out on the highest Hill, as usual, to see how the Ice was without, and found all fast as far as I could see below, and 8 or 10 Miles above us, without the Islands.
12			

*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, North America.*  
**TRANSACTIONS, &c.**

L.W.	H.	K.F.	Course.	Winds.
2				N.
4				W. N. W.
6				
8				
10				
12				
2				
4				
6				S. S. E.
8				
10				
12				

Moderate and fair Weather. The Tide flowed 13 Feet and half.

Hazy Weather, a small Air.

Our People employed in filling of Water.

Variable Wind from N. W. to S. S. E. and some Rain.

Got our Stern Anchor on Board.

Got ditto a-head, ready to heave her out of the Cove.

Hazy and Rain.

Ditto Weather. Have taugth all our Mooring again. A fresh Gale right into the Cove brought in much Ice from the *Wellcome*, and obliged us to lay fast.

Many large Pieces of Ice driving up and down with the Tide.

**Our Six-oar'd Boat not yet returned with the Lieutenant and Master.**

Saturday,  
 July 31.

Aug. 1.

S.

Fresh Gales, and much Rain.

Wind veered round from the S. W. to the N. N. W. At 10 o'clock our Stern Anchor

Our Six-oar'd Boat not yet returned with the Lieutenant and Master,

Aug. 1.

2	S.
4	
6	
8	
10	S. W.
12	ditto.
2	ditto.
4	
6	
8	
10	
12	

Fresh Gales, and much Rain.

Wind veered round from the S. W. to the N. N. W. At 1 got out our Stern Anchor. At 5 the Boat came on Board with the Lieutenant and Master, and gave me an Account that they had been up 10 or 12 Leagues above Deer Sound, and coming back saw many Whales of the Whalebone Kind, a little below Deer Sound.

Moderate and fair.

At 4 unmoor'd, and warp'd out of the Cove into *Savage Sound*.

Continued wrapping. Fresh Gales at S. E. and S. S. E.

The Lieutenant and Master brought on Board, by my Order, two Bottles of Water taken up along-side of the Boat. One at *Deer Sound*, the other 10 or 12 Leagues above it, being the highest they went up. This latter tasted but barely brackish. The Talc showed there no more than 6 Fect. But no Flood run up so high as that.



Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, in the River Wager, in North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2			Variable Winds. Continued warping out of the Cove.
4			At 4 got out, and moor'd in <i>Savage Sound</i> , 2 Miles without the Cove.
6			<i>Scurry-grais</i> Island bore S. the Eastmost Point in the Sound bore S. E. by S. the N. Point of the Cove N. by E. in 20 Fathoms Water, clear sandy Ground.
8			Moderate Weather, and Winds variable. Much Ice driving down with the Ebb.
10			Sent our six-oar'd Boat and 7 Hands to help the Tender out of the Cove.
12			Much Rain.
2		S. S. E.	Ditto.
4			Fresh Gale.
6			Continual Rain.
8			Much Ice driving up and down with the Tide.
10			
12			

Monday,  
Aug. 2.

Wind, Weather, &c. as per Logg. At 3 this Morning I went down the River, to see if it was any Thing clear of Ice below; as likewise in the *Wallace*, hoping to get out the next Shift of the Wind. Found the Ice much thinned above in the River without the Islands.

Aug. 3.

2			A fresh Gale. Hazy with Rain.
4			At 4 I returned on Board with the Boat. Much Rain.

S. E. by S.

Much Ice driving up and down with the Tide.

Wind, Weather, &c. as per Logg. At 3 this Morning I went down the River, to see if it was any Thing clear of Ice below; as likewise in the *Wallowes*, hoping to get out the next Shift of the Wind. Found the Ice much thinned above in the River without the Islands.

Aug. 3.

	2	4	6	8	10	12	2	4	6	8	10	12
S. E. by S.												
			ditto.									
			ditto.									
			E.									

A fresh Gale. Hazy with Rain.

At 4 I returned on Board with the Boat. Much Rain.

Ditto, fresh Gale. Hazy with Rain.

Ditto.

Moderately fair.

Cleared Harle ready for unmooring.

Hazy, but fair.

Loaded all our Sails to dry. Little Wind and variable.

At 12 made a Signal to unmoor. A fresh Breeze.

I returned on Board with the Boat as above, having found the Ice pretty clear in the *Offing* and River. It will be good Luck, if we can get out in one Tide; for there is no anchoring by the Way whilst the Ice is driving up and down, and the Tides so strong below, the Spring-tides also at hand. However, if it please God, I will try as soon as the Wind will permit.

*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.*  
**TRANSACTIONS, &c.**

Wednes-  
day,  
Aug. 4.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
2			n. by w.
4			
6			
8			
10			
12			s. s. w.
2	4	E. S. E.	s.
4	6	E.	s. s. e.
6		s. by e.	s. w. by w.
8	4	e. by n.	n. by e.
10	4	s.	e. s. e.
12	4	s. by w.	s. e. by s.
		e. s. e.	n. e.

Lat. obf.  
65° 38'.

Longitude  
from Lon-  
don, 85°  
07' W.

At half past 12 unmoor'd. At 1 got under Sail.  
 Running down the River against the Tide of Flood. Almost calm. Got the Boat a-head. Towed and rowed with the Ship's Oars on Board. By 6 a-breadth of the lowermost Islands. Then the Tide was fallen 1 Foot.

Continued rowing and towing, being calm. The Tender in Company.

By 10 got out of the River. A small Air of Wind at E. S. E. and variable. A very strong Tide set us out at the Rate of 5 Miles an Hour.

The River's Mouth at 12 bore N. W. by W. 4 Leagues. Fell in with a Ledge of Ice. Got in our eight-oar'd Boat. Sounded 30 Fathoms to 36. Flood coming from the East. The Eastmost Land on the N. Side in Sight N. E. 6 Leagues. The nearest ditto N. N. W. 4 or 5 Leagues. The Entrance of the River N. W. by W. 5 or 6 Leagues. Cape Dobbs W. N. W. 9 Leagues. Sounded 37, 34 Fathoms. Almost calm.

Saw two or three black Whales blow this Watch.

Sounded 30, 22, 20. Tack'd. Light Air. Variable.

At 9 lay'd to for the Tender. Up S. S. E. off S. W. Sounded 37, 45 Fathoms. Sounded 47, 46 Fathoms. The Southmost Land on the S. Shore in Sight bore S. nearest DR. S. E. by S. The Eastmost Part ditto bore E. by N. 4 Leagues. The Eastmost on the N. Shore N. by E. the nearest Distance N. W. half N. 8 Leagues. The Westmost Part in Sight bore W. at Noon.

Have had Wind, &c. as above. Our Course made, since we got out of the River to this Day at Noon, allowing the Variation, with the bearing and Distance of the Lands included, is E. 20° N. Dist. 42 Miles. Depart. 37 Miles. Longit. as above; allowing the River Wager's Mouth to be in Latit. 65° 24' N. and Longit. from the Merid. of London 86° 37' W. I several Times tryed the Flood to come from the East and E. by N. near Mid-straits here, and an East Moon makes full Sea or High-water here, as well as in the River's Mouth. Working to the Eastward to meet the Tide of Flood in this Strait, which is about 13 Leagues

X. Longit.  
from  
Wager R.  
Mouth,  
1° 30' E. ( 34 )

Variation  
obf. 38'.  
W.

Aug. 5.

11	2	1	6	E. by S.	N. E. by N.
11	4	1	4		do.

Fair. Standing over to the S. Shore. Sounded 41, 40, 35.

Fair. Sounded 35, 36, 34. At 4 tack'd. The Eastmost Part on the South Side

from Lon-  
don 84°  
28' W.

Have had Wind, &c. as above. Our Course made, since we got out of the River to this Day at Noon, allowing the Variation, with the bearing and Distance of the Lands included, is E. 20° N. Dist. 45 Miles, Depart. 37 Miles, makes us in Latit. and Longit. as above; allowing the River *Wager's* Mouth to be in Latit. 65° 24' N. and Longit. from the Merid. of *London* 86° 37' W. I several Times tryed the Flood to come from the East and E. by N. near Mid-fruits here, and an East Moon makes full Sea or High-water here, as well as in the River's Mouth. Working to the Eastward to meet the Tide of Flood in this Strait, which is about 13 Leagues from the N. Shore N. by E. the nearest Distance N. W. half N. 8 Leagues. The Westmost Part in Sight bore W. at Noon.

Thursday

Aug. 5.

12	1	4	8. by W.	E. by N.
	1	4	E. S. E.	N. E.
11	2	1	6	E. by S.
	4	1	4	do.
11	6	1	1	N. N. W. 1/2 W
	8	1	2	N. N. E.
5	10	2	3	E. by N.
	12	3	3	N. N. W.
4	2	2	6	N. E. by E.
	4	2	4	
8	6	2	7	E. b. N. 1/2 N
	8	2		E. by N.
8	10	2		
	12	2	5	E. b. N. 1/2 N
				N. 1/2 E.

Latit. obf. 66° 14'.

Latitude by Acc. 66° 07'.

Fair. Standing over to the S. Shore. Sounded 41, 40, 35.  
 Fair. Sounded 35, 36, 34. At 4 tack'd. The Eastmost Part on the South Side N. E. by E. the Westmost S. W. half W. nearest Dist. 2 Leagues.  
 The Northmost Part of the N. Side in Sight bore N. E. by E. 8 or 9 Leagues. Moderate Weather.  
 Ditto Weather. Sounded 35, 36, 35, 36, hard and rocky. At 8 the E. part S. Shore E. by S. the Southmost ditto S. W. by S. nearest Dist. 3 Leagues.  
 The Land on the N. Side N. E. the Westmost Point W. by N. the Mouth of the River *Wager* N. W. At half past 8 tack'd. At 9 set Main-fail. Sounded 34 Fathoms.  
 Sounded a-crois 46, 48 Fathoms, the greatest Depth. At half past 12 up Main-fail. Tack'd. Standing along the N. Shore, sounded 38, 40, 38 Fathoms. Small brown Stones. Hard Ground, with dark-coloured Shells.  
 Ditto Weather. Sounded 37, 34, 41 Fathoms. Ditto Ground. The Northmost Point of Land on the N. Side in Sight bore N. N. E. 4 or 5 Leagues.  
 Fair and clear. At half past 12 up Fore-fail. Sounded 33 to 25 Fathoms. Light Air.  
 The Tide run all in Eddies. Sounded 27, 44, 43.  
 Saw much Ice to the Northward near the Land, and 3 Leagues off. Sounded 37, 36, 38, 40 Fathoms.  
 Sailing among shatter'd Ice. Sounded 37, 39 Fathoms, hard rocky Ground. The Eastmost Point on the S. Side bears N. E. by E. Northmost Point on the N. Side in Sight N. half E. South Side is a low Beach.

Have had Winds, Weather, &c. as above. Our Course made with due Allowance is N. 29° E. Dist. 32 Miles, Depart. 16, 4 Miles. Working to Eastward with little Wind, amongst shatter'd Pieces of Ice at Noon. The Land on the S. Side for 7 Leagues runs E. by N. and W. by S. a fine low even Beach like Dungnefs. All the South Side, which I have yet seen, is of the same Sort of Shingle or Gravel. At the East End of this Beach, or low Land, appears now in Sight a very mountainous, high, and rugged Land, like some Part of *Hudson's Straits*. This Strait, where we are now at Noon, is very narrow, not above 8 or 9 Leagues broad. The Tide runs here very strong with such Eddies and Whirlings, that the Ship will hardly steer, and the Flood comes from the E. by N. by Compaſs.  
 At Noon the Mouth of River *Wager* bore W. 44° S. Dist. 73 Miles. In the Channel tolerable good Soundings. S. Side on ditto half Mile dist.

from *London* 84° 28' W.

X. Longit. from *Wager* River's Mouth 2° 09' E.

Variation N. 40° W.

Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

	L. W.	H. K. E.	Course.	Winds.
Friday, Aug 6.	2	4	E. N. E.	N.
	4	2	E. by N.	N. by E.
	6	4	N. E. by E	N. by W.
	8	4	N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.	N. by E.
	10	2	N. W.	N. N. E.
	12	5	N. E. by E.	N. by W.
	2	3	N. W. by W.	N. by E.
	4	4	N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N.	N. N. W.
	6	2	N. E. by N.	N. W. by N.
	8	1		
	10	3	N. W. by N.	
	12	1	N. by W.	N. E. by E.

Lat. obs.  
66°. 44'.  
Latitude  
C. Hope  
66°. 30'.  
Longitude  
C. Hope  
65°. 55' W

Latitude  
Beech Pt.  
66°. 21'.  
Longitude dit.  
80°. 23' W

Longitude  
from Lon-  
don 84°. 28' W.

Lay to from 12 to 1 for the Tender. Tried the Tide. Found the Flood came from E. by S. Sounded 45 Fathoms. The End or Point of the Beech S. S. E. 4 or 5 Miles dist. At half past 2 sent the Lieutenant with the six-oar'd Boat on Shore, to try the Time of the Tide. He found it to be flowing Tide, and that it came from the Eastward. At 3 made a Signal for the Boat to come on Board. Much Ice. At 4 made sail. The Northmost Land on the N. Side in Sight N. half W. The Eastmost on the E. Side E. N. E. At 6 tack'd for Ice.

In standing a-crofs the Channel sounded 48, 44, 48, stony Ground. The high Land in Sight joining to the low Beach S. by W. 6 Leagues. C. Hope N. by E. half E. 5 Leagues. Moderate Weather, working to Windward. Sounded 32, 35 Fathoms. At 9 tack'd. Sounded 30, 34 Fathoms, hard rocky Ground. Much Ice in our Way.

Fair, but hazy. Sounded 35, 38 Fathoms. At 11 no Ground at 50 Fathoms. At 12 Cape Hope bore N. W. by W. Working amongst Ice.

Sounded 35, 38 Fathoms. Much Ice in our Way. Obligated to tack for it often.

Sounded 38, 40 Fathoms.

Light Gales. Working amongst sailing Ice. At 5 sounded 96 Fathoms, well over to the E. Shore. Very high Land in this Bay. At 6 sounded 90 Fathoms, Shells.

Sailing amongst flatter'd Ice. Sounded 66 Fathoms. At half past 7 tack'd. The Northmost Point on the E. Side N. by W. dit. on the E. Side N. W. by W. 5 or 6 Lea. dist. Sailing amongst ditto Ice. Sounded 66 Fathoms. Tried the Tide, found little or none. Little Wind, and much Ice.

At half past to tack'd. Sounded 66 Fathoms to 68, 70. At Noon Cape Hope bore S. W. half S. 6 or 7 Leagues.

Variation  
N. 50° W.

Remarks as per Logg. Our Course made with proper Allowance, is N. Dist. 36 Miles. At 4 in the Afternoon set a fair Cape or Headland on the West or North Shore, which bore from us as above. The Land trenching away from the E. by N. to the N. by W. making 8 Points Difference, gives us great Joy, and Hopes of its being the extreme Part of America; on which Account I named it *Cape Hope*. We worked up round it through much fragling Ice all Night. In the Morning, when the Sun cleared away the Haze, to our great Disappointment, we saw the Land from the low Beach quite round to the Westward of the North, which met the Western Shore, and makes a very deep Bay. Thus our Hopes of a Passage that Way were all over'd. But to make sure, we kept on our Course to the Cod of the Bay till 2 in the Afternoon, when we could not go above 6 or 8 Miles further that Way.

Light Air. Sounded 70 Fathoms. At a tack'd in the Cod of the Bay. It bore N. W. by W. 3 Leagues. From Side to Side a-crofs 6 or 7 Leagues. High Land.

Ditto fair. At 4 sounded 74 Fathoms. Cape Hope bore S. W. by Compass 7 or 8 Leagues distant.

	L. W.	H. K. E.	Course.	Winds.
Aug 7.	2	1	N. N. W.	W.
	4	1	S.	W. S. W.

Longitude  
from Lon-  
don 84°. 41' W.

Remarks as per Logg. Our Course made with proper Allowance, is N. Dist. 36 Miles. At 4 in the Afternoon set a fair Cape or Headland on the West or North Shore, which bore from us as above. The Land trenching away from the E. by N. by W. making 8 Points Difference, gives us great Joy, and Hopes of its being the extreme Part of *America*; on which Account I named it *Cape Hope*. We worked up round it through much fragging Ice all Night. In the Morning, when the Sun cleared away the Haze, to our great Disappointment, we saw the Land from the low Beach quite round to the Westward of the North, which met the Western Shore, and makes a very deep Bay. Thus our Hopes of a Passage that Way were all over. But to make sure, we kept on our Course to the Cod of the Bay till 2 in the Afternoon, when we could not go above 6 or 8 Miles further that Way.

AUG. 7.

2	1	4	N. N. W.	W.
4	1	6	S.	W. S. W.
6	2	5	by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E	E. by S.
8	2	1		
10	1	4	S. S. W.	S. E.
12	2	7	S. W.	S. S. E.
2	2	2	S. S. W.	S. E.
4	2	4		
6	2			
8	3	4	E. N. E.	S. E.
10	3	4	S. W.	S. E.
12	1	5	W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W	

Light Air. Sounded 70 Fathoms. At 2 tack'd in the Cod of the Bay. It bore N. W. by W. 3 Leagues. From Side to Side a-cross 6 or 7 Leagues. High Land.

Ditto fair. At 4 sounded 74 Fathoms. Cape Hope bore S. W. by Compass 7 or 8 Leagues distant.

Light Air, and clear W. Sounded 78 Fathoms.

Ditto Weather. Sounded 90 Fathoms. C. Hope S. W. by W. 6 or 7 Leagues distant.

Ditto Weather. Sailing amongst fragging Ice.

At 12 Cape Hope bore W. by N. 4 or 5 Leagues. The Eastmost Land on the E. Side N N. E. Working among fragging Ice. Sounded 105 Fathoms.

A small Breeze. Amongst falling Ice.

Sailing amongst Ice. At 4 sounded 55 Fathoms. C. Hope N. N. E. 5 Leagues.

Half past 5 tack'd for the Tender. Sounded 55 Fathoms to 40. Much Ice to the Eastward of us.

At 8 tack'd. Cape Hope N. by W. half W. 6 Leagues. The low Beach S. W. 4 or 5 Leagues. Sounded 55 Fathoms.

At 10 I went on Shore with the Boat to try if I could find where the Flood came in, and how this Channel or Strait lay; also to try the Tide. At half past 11 lay to for the Boat. In 1 Reef of each Top-sail. At 12 C. Hope bore N. half E. 6 Leagues. The Beach W. S. W. 4 Leagues. The Entrance of the *New Strait* amongst the Islands on the E. Side, E. 2 Leagues.

Obs. Lat. 66° 21'.

Variation. N. 45° W.

Wind, Weather, &c. as above, having been working out of this North Bay, and now got off the Strait where the Tide comes in. Went on Shore, as above, to try the Tide, and to find from whence the Flood comes. The Land is very high here, The Gunner, Carpenter, and Clerk along with me.



Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2		S. E.
	4	S. S. W. E. N. E.	S. W. 1/2 W.
	6	3 4	S. S. E.
	8		
	10		
	12		S. E. by E
	2		
	4	5	E. S. E.
	6	5 5	w. by s.
	8	6	
	10	4	
	12		

Longitude from Lon- don 85° 22'.

Lying to for the Boat, up S. off S. W. At 2 made fail, and stood in Shore. Sounded 33, 30, 30, 27 Fathoms. Cape Hope N. half E. dist. 6 Leagues. The Beach S. W. half W. The Middle of the frozen Straits E. S. E. 3 Leagues. Tack'd at three.

At 6 tack'd. A fresh Gale. Standing in for the Boat. Sounded 60 Fathoms. At half past 6 laid to for the Boat. At 8 C. Hope N. half E. or N. The low Beach Point W. S. W. 4 or 5 Leagues

At half past 9 I got on Board with the Boat. Continued lying. Fresh Gales and hazy.

Ditto fresh Gales and hazy. Much Ice all round us.

At 2 bore away. Fired a Gun for the Tender.

At 3 sounded 35 Fathoms, distant from the Beach 1 Mile. Cape Hope N. E. by N. 6 Leagues. The Beach Point S. E. by E. 9 Miles.

A fresh Gale and hazy, falling along the S. Shore. From the Point to a-breadth of us is E. by N. and W. by S. Ditto falling 3 Leagues off the S. Shore. As far as we can see to the W. it lyeth W. S. W.

At half past 9 lay'd to for the Tender. Much Ice on the W. Shore, near a third over.

Up S. by W. off S. W. At 12 the nearest Distance from the N. Shore 8 or 9 Leagues. The S. Shore S. W. by S. Dist. 3 or 4 Leagues. Sounded 33 Fathoms.

Variation N. 38° W.

Wind, Weather, &c. as above. Our Course made since 2 in the Morning that we bore away, to Noon, is S. 30° W. Dist. 47 Miles, Depart. 23, 5 Miles. I returned on Board last Night, as above, having been 15 Miles from the Place where we landed. My Clerk, the Carpenter, Gunner, and one Indian were with me. We passed over high Mountains, till we came to the furthest, which overlooks the frozen Strait, and the East Bay on the other Side; and could see the Passage where the Flood came in. The narrowest Part of this Strait is 4 or 5 Leagues, being 6 or 7 at the broadest, almost full of long small Islands. Its Length is about 16 or 18 Leagues. It stretches S. E. round to the S. To the Westward we could see it from Beginning to End all full of Ice not yet broken up, quite fast to both Shores, and to the small Islands. We saw very high Land 15 or 20 Leagues to the Southward of our Station, which I take to run towards Cape Comfort, being the furthest that

Obs. Lat. 65° 41'.

Latit. by Acc. 65° 38'.

At half past 12 bore away. Made fail. At 2 the Mouth of the River Weger N. W. the gr. N. 8 or 9 Leagues.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2	4	W. S. W.
			E. by S.

Longitude from Lon- don 86° 56' W.

variation  
N. 30° W.

The S. Shore S. W. by S. Diff. 3 or 4 Leagues. Sounded 33 Fathoms.

38. Wind, Weather, &c. as above. Our Course made since 2 in the Morning that we bore away, to Noon, is S. 30° W. Dist. 47 Miles, Depart. 23.5 Miles. I returned on Board last Night, as above, having been 15 Miles from the Place where we landed. My Clerk, the Carpenter, Gunner, and one *Indians* were with me. We passed over high Mountains, till we came to the furthest, which overlooks the frozen Strait, and the East Bay on the other Side; and could see the Passage where the Flood came in. The narrowest Part of this Strait is 4 or 5 Leagues, being 6 or 7 at the broadest, almost full of long small Islands. Its Length is about 16 or 18 Leagues. It fetches S. E. round to the S. To the Westward we could see it from Beginning to End all full of Ice not yet broken up, quite fast to both Shores, and to the small Islands. We saw very high Land 15 or 20 Leagues to the Southward of our Station, which I take to run towards Cape *Conyer*, being the furthest that

from *Lond*  
don 86°  
56. W.

W. H.	Course	W. S. W.	E. by S.
2	4		
4	4		
6	5	S. W. by S.	
8	6		
10	6	N. W.	
12	5		
2	5	W. by S.	E. by N.
4	4	S. to deepen Water.	
45	6	Up S. E. off S. S. E.	
45	8	Do. drift.	E. N. E.
45	10	Do. drift.	
45	12	Do.	N. E. by E.

At half past 12 bore away. Made sail. At 2 the Mouth of the River *Weger* N. W. the gr. N. 8 or 9 Leagues.

Fresh Gale. Set all the Small-sails. At 4 C. *Dobbs* N. W. 3 gr. W. Dist. 6 Leagues.

Fair and clear. Sounded 50 Fathoms.

Ditto. Sounded from 60 to 65 Fathoms.

Fresh Gales, and hazy. Sounded at one, 56, 50 Fathoms.

Altered Course. Sounded from 43 to 25 Fathoms. At 4 up Fore-sail. Sounded 34 Fathoms 5 Leagues off the North Shore.

Reeft the Top-sails, and laid to for moderate Weather.

Sounded 66 and 70 Fathoms, Rocks and Stones.

Ditto Weather. Sounded 68 Fathoms, ditto Ground.

Sounded 70, 65 Fathoms. The Land on the S. Side in Sight from E. by S. to S. about 16 or 18 Leagues broad.

Variation. N. 33° W.

Monday, Aug. 9, Have had Wind, Weather, Soundings, &c. as above. Our Course, allowing Lee-way, Drift and Variation, is S. 25° W. Dist. 94 Miles, Depart. 40 Miles. At Noon Cape *Dobbs* bore N. 20° E. Dist. 23 Leagues.

*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.*  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

Tuesday,  
Aug. 10.

L.W.	H.	K.	F.	Courfe.	Winds.
45	2	1	4	Up s. e. off s. s. e. drift.	
45	4	1	4	Dr. up N. N. W. off N. W.	N. E. by E.
45	6	1	4	Up N. by W. off N. W. S.	
45	8	3	6	N.	E.
	10	2		N. b. W.	
45	12	1	2	Up N. N. E. off N. by W.	
45	2	1		Up N. by E. off N. by W.	E. N. E.
45	4	1	2		
45	6	2	6		E. N. E.
	5	4	6	N. W.	
	10	3		W. b. N. E. N.	
	12	3	6	W. N. W.	E. N. E.

Lat. obs.  
63° 56'.

Latit. by.  
Acc. 63° 57'.

Longitude from London, 88° 53' W.

Sounded 36 Fathoms. At a wore Ship, and lay'd to with her Head to the Northward. Fresh Gales, and a head Sea. Sounded 45, 43, 44 Fathoms. The Extreme Part of the S. Shore in Sight from S. to S. E. by E. 6 or 7 Leagues.

At 7 made fail. Moderate Weather. Stood in for the N. Shore. At 8 saw it, as also the S. Shore. Sounded 60 Fathoms in the Mid-way.

Moderate Weather. Standing over for the N. Shore. Sounded 47, 46, 45 Fathoms. At 10 lay'd to.

Her Head to the Northward. Sounded 45, 43 Fathoms.

Moderate. Sounded 47 to 45 Fathoms.

Sounded 45, 35 Fathoms. At 4 wore. The N. Shore from N. E. to N. N. W. nearest Dist. N. 4 or 5 Leagues.

At 5 made fail. Sounded 45 Fathoms.

Fresh Gales, and hazy. Sounded 40, 39, 36, 37 Fathoms. The N. Shore from N. by E. to E. by N. nearest Dist. 3 Leagues.

Kept as near Shore as we could, to look for Openings or Passages in the Land. Sounded 29, 24, 26 Fathoms, Stones and Rocks, and some Sand.

Moderate. Sounded 35, 35, 34, 25 Fathoms. Out first Reefs of the Top-sails, Variation N. 3° W.

These 24 Hours have had Wind, Weather, Soundings, &c. as per Logg. Our Courfe, allowing Drift, Lee-way, and Variation, is W. 23 S. Distance 53 Miles, Depart. 51. At Noon Cape Dobb's bore N. 44° E. Dist. 35 Leagues.

Wednes-  
day,  
Aug. 11.

L.W.	H.	K.	F.	Courfe.	Winds.
	2	3	3	W. S. W.	E. by S.

Longitude from London, 90° 25' W.

Moderate and hazy. Sounded 30, 34, 36 Fathoms. Dist. N. 4 or 5 Leagues. At 10 lay'd to.

These 24 Hours have had Wind, Weather, Soundings, &c. as per Logg. Our Course, allowing Drift, Lee-way, and Variation, is W. 33 S. Distance 53 Miles, Depart. 51. At Noon Cape Dobb bore N. 44° E. Diff. 35 Leagues.

Wednes- day, Aug. 11.	L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2	3	W. S. W.	E. by S.
	4	2	W. by S.	
	5	3	W. S. W.	
	8	2	S. W.	ditto.
	10	1	Up S. by E. off S. S. W.	E. by S.
Lat. obs. 63° 14' N	45	12	Ditto.	ditto.
	45	2	Ditto	ditto.
	45	4	Ditto	ditto.
	6		N. N. W.	N. E.
	8		N. by W.	N. E. by E.
	10		N. N. W.	
Lat. by Ac. 63° 19'	12			

Continued coasting the Shore of the *Willow* all along from our frozen Straits, and hitherto found all to be main Land, tho' there may be many small Islands and deep Bays. This Head-land, and the other in Latitude 64°, make a deep Bay. In our Passage out we did not see the Bottom of it, as we now have done, by keeping closer in Shore. We have seen several black Whales of the Whalebone Kind. Our Course made since last Noon, allowing Drift, Lee-way and Variation, is W. 42° S. diff. 54 Miles, depart. 40 Miles. At Noon Cape Dobb bore N. 44° E. diff. 55 Leagues.

Moderate and hazy. Sounded 30, 34, 36 Fathoms.  
 Ditto Weather. Sounded 39, 34 Fathoms. At 3 fet Fore-fail.  
 Continued sailing in Sight of the main Land off the N. Shore, quite from C. Hope. Halled off to deepen our Water. Sounded 34, 28 Fathoms.  
 A fresh Gale. Sounded 29, 35, 40 Fathoms. At 8 up Fore-fail, and double-reef both Top-fails. Lay'd to till Day-light.  
 Sounded 52 Fathoms. Fresh Gales, and clear Weather.  
 Ditto Weather. Sounded 42, 44 Fathoms.  
 Sounded 60, 65 Fathoms. Ditto Weather.  
 Sounded 65, 65 Fathoms. At 4 made fail.  
 At 6 stood in with a Head-land 9 or 10 Leagues to the Eastward of *Brook Cobham*. Bore N. W. by N. Diff. 5 or 6 Leagues. Sounded 60 to 49 Fathoms.  
 At 7 fet Fore-fail. Sounded 60 to 50 Fathoms. Little Wind, and fair Weather.  
 Sounded from 49 to 9 Fathoms. Standing for this Head-land. Two Leagues off saw several black Whales playing in shoal Water.  
 At 12 halled off from the Head-land to deepen our Water. At Noon saw the Island of *Brook Cobham* bore W. by S. 8 or 9 Leagues. At Noon 20 Fathoms 4 Leagues off Shore.

Variation observed N. 28° W.

from Low-  
 day, 900:  
 25° W.

Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.	Longitude from London, 91° 43' W.
2	3	2 S. W. by W.	N. E. by E.	
4	3	6 S. W. 1/2 W.		
6	3	2 W. by S.		
8	2	4		
10	4	Up E. by N.	N. E. by N.	
12	4	Up E. by S.	N. by E.	
15	6	3 E. by S.	N. E. by N.	
17	2	3 Up E. by N.	N. E.	
18	4	4 Off E. S. E.		
19	6	3 E. by S.		
20	3	4 N. N. W.		
21	2	4		
22	2	4		

Thursday,  
Aug. 12.

Lat. obs.  
62° 49'.

Moderate and clear Weather. Sounded 39, 30, 31, 25, 23, 17 Fathoms.

Ditto Weather. Sounded 23, 20, 34, 38, 40, 45 Fathoms. The S. End of Brook Cobham W. N. W. 4 Leagues.

Ditto Weather. Sounded 38, 24, 25 Fathoms.

At 8 brac'd to, and tryed the Tide. It came from the East. Tack'd.

Lying to until Day-light. Sounded 34, 37, 39 Fathoms.

Sounded 38, 37, 35 Fathoms.

Little Wind and variable. Sounded 35, 36, 37, 39 Fathoms.

At 3 sent the Lieutenant with the six-car'd Boat to Brook Cobham, to try the Tides there. At 4 made fail. Work'd to Windward.

At 6 tack'd. Stood in for the Island, expecting our Boat's coming off.

Sounded 50, 46, 43, 43 Fathoms.

Working to Windward to wait for our Boat.

At 12 the Middle of Brook Cobham Island bore N. E. by E. 4 or 5 Leagues. Continued working up towards it.

Variation  
N. 28° W.

Have had Wind, Weather, Soundings, &c. as *see* Logg. At 3 in the Morning sent the Lieutenant and the two *Indians* a-fore, to try the Tide at Brook Cobham, and to see if we could water our Ships there for Home. This Island is in Latit. 63° 20'. and Longitude from the Meridian of London 91° 40'. West. All of a hard white marly Stone. It is about 3 Leagues from the W. Main, its Length 7 Leagues N. W. by W. and S. E. by E. by Compass. Its Breadth 3 Leagues in the broadest Part. Our Course made since last Noon to this Day at Noon is W. 34° S. Dist. 40 Miles, depart. 33 Miles.  
N. B. This Island bears from Cape Dilly S. 20° West. Dist. 10 Miles.

Aug. 13.

2 2 4 N. by E. 1/2 E.

E. 1/2 N.

A small Breeze. Working up towards the Island, 3 Leagues off Shore. Sounded 23, 19, 15, 16, 15 Fathoms.

Tack'd at 9. The Tide of the Island bore N. W. by W. 1/2 W. Dist. 10 Miles.

( 42 )

Variation  
N. 28° W.

At 12 the Middle of *Broot Cobham* Island bore N. E. by E. 4 or 5 Leagues. Continued working up towards it.

Have had Wind, Weather, Soundings, &c. as *Logg*. At 3 in the Morning sent the Lieutenant and the two *Indians* a-shore, to try the Tide at *Broot Cobham*, and to see if we could water our Ships there for Home. This Island is in Latit. 63° 26'. and Longitude from the Meridian of *London* 91°. 40'. West. All of a hard white marly Stone. It is about 3 Leagues from the W. Main, its Length 7 Leagues N. W. by W. and S. E. by E. by Compass. Its Breadth 3 Leagues in the broadest Part. Our Course made since last Noon to this Day at Noon is W. 36°. S. Dist. 40 Miles, depart. 33 Miles.  
N. B. This Island bears from *Cape Dory* S. 47°. West. Dist. 18 Leagues.

Aug. 13.

2	2	4	N. b. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.	E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N.	A small Breeze. Working up towards the Island, 3 Leagues off Shore. Sounded 23.
4	2		S. E.	E. N. E.	19, 15, 16, 15 Fathoms.
6					Tack'd at 2. The Body of the Island bore E. N. E. 7 Miles, in 15 Fathoms Water.
8					At 6 almost calm. Came to with our small Anchor, the Tender by us, in 24 Fathoms, to stop the Tide, and for the Boat. The Middle of the Island bore N. E. by E. 4 Leagues.
10					Light Airs, and variable.
12					Fired a Gun every half Hour, as a Signal for the Boat to come off.
2					At 1 the Boat comes on Board.
4					Moderate and hazy.
6					At 5 I sent the Master and the fir-car'd Boat a-shore for Water; also the Tender's Boat for Water.
8					Our Men employed in scraping and cleansing between Decks.
10					At 12 made a Signal for the Boats to come off.
12					

Have had Wind, Weather, &c. as above. The Lieutenant returned on Board as above, and gave me an Account, that being but two or three Hours on Shore, there was neither high or low Water during that Time. That they saw three Deer at their Landing, one of which they killed; also a white Bear, which they brought on Board, but it was very poor. Found every where Plenty of fresh Water; and saw some Swans and Ducks.



Remarable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.  
TRANSACTIONS, &c.

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2		N. b. W.
	4		
	6		
	8		N. N. W.
	10		
	12		
	2		
	4		
	6		
	8		
	10		
	12		

Moderate and variable Winds.

Ditto. At 4 the Boat came on Board with 1 Tun of fresh Water. At 5 I sent her away for more.

Fired every half Hour 1 Gun for our Boat.

Continued firing; Hazy.

Ditto. Hazy.

At 2 the Boat got on Board with the Water.

I sent the Boat again for more Water; and the two Northern Indians with a small Boat we had from the Tender, bought at *Charcill* for transporting them into their own Country, or the main Land. I gave them a large Load of Powder, Shot, Hatchets, Tobacco, Toys, &c. and Provisions for some Time.

These 24 Hours we have had Wind, &c. as above. And are getting Water to make up our Quantity.

Sunday,  
Aug. 15.

Variable little Winds and Calms.

At 4 weighed, and made a Signal for our Boat to come off.

don 00°.  
25. W.



Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.

Monday, Aug. 16.	L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
	2	7	4 S. E.	N. W.
	4	6	2 ditto.	
	6	5	4 S. E. by E.	N. N. W.
	8	3	5	
	10	3		
	12	2		
	2	6	S. E. by E.	W.
	4	1	3 E. S. E.	S. W.
	6	1	4	
	8	1	4	s. by w.
	10	3	4	
	12	4	5	

Longitude from London 87° 37' W.

TRANSACTIONS, &c.

Foggy, and much Rain. A great Sea from the Northward. Shortned Sail for the Tender.

Ditto Weather. Sounded 75 Fathoms.

Continual Rain. Set Mizzen Top-sail.

Ditto, and foggy.

Ditto. Sounded 90 Fathoms. Little Wind.

Ditto, and Rain. Sounded 90 Fathoms.

Almost calm.

Up Fore-sail for the Tender. Sounded 90 Fathoms.

Cloudy and Rain. At 5 let Fore-sail and Jibb. Sounded 100 Fathoms.

Ditto. Out Reefs of the Top-sails.

Hazy, and frequent Showers of Rain.

Fresh Gales and hazy.

Monday, Aug. 16.

Obs. Lat. 61° 00'.

Latit. by Acc. 61° 10' N.

Have had fresh Gales, and foggy, with much Rain, and a great tumbling Sea from the Northward. Our Course made, allowing Variation, is E. 6° S. dist. 82 Miles Depart. 81 Miles. I find by Observation that we are more Southward than by Account, which is owing to our bad Steerage; for we have not above two Men able to go to the Helm, who are tolerably acquainted with it.

At Noon *Great Cabin* bore from us W. 45° N. Dist. 56 Leagues.

Tuesday, Aug. 17.

L.W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
8	2	4	7 E. S. E.
10	4	1	7 by S.
12	4	5	S. by W.

Fresh Gales, and hazy.

Ditto.

Longitude from London 85° 47' W.

Have had fresh Gales, and foggy, with much Rain, and a great tumbling Sea from the Northward. Our Course made, allowing Variation, is E. 6° S. dist. 82 Miles. Depart. 8 1/2 Miles. I find by Observation that we are more Southward than by Account, which is owing to our bad Steerage; for we have not above two Men able to go in the Helm, who are tolerably acquainted with it.

At Noon *Brock Cobham* bore from us W. 45° N. Dist. 56 Leagues.

Tuesday,

Aug. 17.

3	2	4	7	E. S. E.	S.
8	4	4	4	E. by S.	S. by E.
11	6	3	4	E. by N.	S. E. by S.
11	8	4	2		
11	10	2	2		
12	12	2	1	E. b. N. 1/2 N.	
12	2	1		N. E. 1/2 E	E. S. E.
12	4	1		S.	
5	6	2		E. S. E. 1/2 S.	N. E.
5	8	2	4	E. by S.	N. E. by N.
5	10	2	6		
11	12	3	5	S. E. by E.	N. E. by E.

Latit. by

Acc. 61°

26.

Fresh Gales, and hazy.

Ditto.

Ditto, and cloudy. Set Main-sail.

Ditto. At 8 fet up Main-sail.

Hazy, and small Rain. Sounded 120 Fathoms.

Ditto. Sounded 120 Fathoms.

At 1 tack'd. Fired 1 Gun for a Signal to the Tender. Let to Wind.

Almost calm. At 4 founded 120 Fathoms.

Ditto. Hazy and foggy. Set Top-gallant Sail. Sounded 120 Fathoms.

Ditto, and foggy.

At 9 fet Main-sails.

Foggy. At 11 in Top-gallant Sails;

from *Lee-*  
*den* 85°.  
47' W.

Variation  
N. 26° W.

Have had for the most part thick foggy Weather, with Rain and Wind variable, as per Log. Our Course failed, allowing Lee-way and Variation, is E. 27° N. Dist. 38 Miles, Depart. 52 Miles.

At Noon *Brock Cobham* Island bore W. 29° N. Dist. 66 Leagues.

*Remarkable Observations on Board his Majesty's Ship Furnace, on a Discovery in North America.*  
**TRANSACTIONS, &c.**

Longitude  
 from Lon-  
 don 84°  
 17' W.

Variation.  
 N. 27° W.

L. W.	H. K. F.	Course.	Winds.
11	2 3 4	E. S. E.	N. E.
11	4 2 4		
11	6 1 6		
8	8 1 7	E. b. S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.	N. E. by N.
8	10 1 6	E. by S.	
8	12 1 4	E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.	N. N. E.
5	2 1 4	E.	N. by E.
	4 1 5		
	6 2		
3	8 1 7		N. N. E.
3	10	7	
	12	1 4	

A thick Fog. At half past 1 up Main-sail for the Tender.

Ditto Weather.

Little Wind.

Hazy.

A small Breeze, with a thick Fog. Sounded 120 Fathoms, Mudd and Clay.

Ditto Weather, almost calm. Sounded 120 Fathoms.

Ditto, little Fog. Sounded 120 Fathoms.

Ditto Weather. Set Top-gallant Sails. Sounded 120 Fathoms.

Ditto Weather.

Light Airs, and hazy. Sounded 120 Fathoms.

Ditto, fair and clear. Cleaned all between Decks. Shortened Sail for the Tender.

Ditto, fair Weather.

Wednes-  
 day,  
 Aug. 18.

Lat. obs.  
 61° 36'.

Latit. by  
 Acc. 61°  
 36'.

These 20 Hours have had little Wind variable, and hazy foggy Weather. Our Course, allowing Lee-way and Variation, is E. 10° N. Dist. 44 Miles, Depart. 43 Miles.  
 At Noon *East* *Course* W. 22° N. Dist. 76 Leagues.

# B O O K S

PRINTED for and SOLD by

## JACOB ROBINSON,

At the *Golden Lion*, in *Ludgate-Street*, near  
*St. Paul's Church*.

### F O L I O.



New Pandect of the Roman Civil Law, as anciently established in that Empire; and now received and practised in most European Nations: Shewing wherein that Law differs from the Municipal Laws of Great Britain, from the Canon Law in general, and from that Part of it now in Use with us in England. With a preliminary Discourse, touching the Rise and Progress of the Civil Law, from the most early Times of the Roman Empire: Wherein is also comprised a particular Account of the Books containing this Law, the Names of the Compilers thereof, their several Editions, and the best Commentators thereon. By J. Ayliffe, LL. D. Fellow of New College, Oxon, 10s.

### Q U A R T O.

Langley's New Principles of GARDENING: Or, the Laying out and Planting PARTERRES, GROVES, WILDERNESSES, LABYRINTHS, AVENUES, PARKS, &c. after a more *Grand* and *Rural* Manner than has been done before; with Experimental Directions for raising the several Kinds of FRUIT-TREES, FOREST-TREES, EVER-GREENS, and FLOWERING-SHRUBS, with which Gardens are adorned. To which is added the various NAMES, DESCRIPTIONS, TEMPERATURES, MEDICINAL VIRTUES, USES, and CULTIVATIONS of several ROOTS, PULSE, HERBS, &c. of the Kitchen and Physic Gardens, that are absolutely necessary for the Service of Families in general. Illustrated with great Variety of GRAND DESIGNS, curiously engraven on 28 Folio Plates, by the best Hands, 10s.

The History of the Council of CONSTANCE. By the Learned and Reverend JAMES LENFANT, translated from the New Edition, printed at Amsterdam, 1727; which the Author not only revised and corrected, but considerably enlarged. Illustrated with

A

20

Variation.  
N. 27° W.

Our Course, allowing Lee-way and Variation, is E. 10° N. Dist. 44 Miles, Depart. 43

Ditto, fair Weather.

These 20 Hours have had little Wind variable, and hazy foggy Weather. At Noon Brest Callam W. 22° N. Dist. 76 Leagues.  
Miles.  
Acc. 61° 36.  
12  
4



20 curious Copper-Plates, 2 Vol. 4to. 12 s. — *N. B.* These Volumes contain an Account of the most important Transactions of Europe at the Beginning of the Fifteenth Century.

## OCTAVO and DUODECIMO.

A Compleat History of the several *Translations* of the HOLY BIBLE into English, and of the most remarkable Editions of them. By J. Lewis, M. A. 5 s.

The Memoirs and Secret Negotiations of John Ker, of Kerland Esq; 2 Vol. 7 s.

The System of the World demonstrated in an easy and familiar Manner. Being a proper Introduction to the most sublime Philosophy. By Sir Isaac Newton. The 2d Edition, 3 s. 6 d.

The History of the English Anabaptists, from the Reformation to the Beginning of the Reign of King George I. 4 Vol. 16 s.

Memoirs of the Life of Mrs. MANLEY, Author of the *Atalantis*. Containing not only the History of her Adventures, but likewise an Account of the most considerable Amours in the Court of King Charles II. With a compleat Key, 2 s. 6 d.

The Principles of Logick and Rhetorick illustrated by Examples drawn from the most approved Authors, ancient and modern, in all the polite Languages. Translated from the French of that learned and judicious Critic M. Bouhours. To which are added, Parallel Instances from the most eminent English Writers in *VERSE* and *PROSE*; calculated for the Reader's Improvement in all the various Kinds of Thought and Expression, 4 s.

Essays on Atheism, the Spleen, Writing, Future Felicity, Divine Love. Containing a Variety of just and beautiful Sentiments on those Subjects. By Sir Richard Blackmore, Knt. M. D. and Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians, 4 s.

The Spirit of Antichrist display'd: In the History of the English Martyrs, who were cruelly burnt, or otherways put to Death, for opposing the Romish Religion; from the Reign of King Henry IV. to the End of the Reign of Queen Mary I. Whereunto is annexed, a short Account of some of the principal Errors taught and practised in the Church of Rome at this Day, 4 s. The Miscellaneous Works of that fine Gentleman and polite Writer, Walter Moyle, Esq; Containing his Essays, Dissertations, and Letters on a Variety of critical and entertaining Subjects. In 2 Vol. 9 s.

Scripture Politics: Being a View of the Original Constitution, and subsequent Revolutions, in the Government, Religious and Civil, of that People, out of whom the Saviour of the World was to arise. By Sam. Coxall, D. D. Arch-deacon of Salop, in the Diocese of Hereford, 5 s.

The Manner of Raising, Ordering, and Improving FOREST-TREES: With Directions how to Plant, Make, and Keep WOODS, WALKS, AVENUES, LAWNS, HEDGES, &c. Also Rules

Rules and Tables, shewing how the ingenious Planter may measure superficial Figures, divide Woods or Land, and measure Timber and other solid Bodies, either by Arithmetic or Geometry: With the Uses of that excellent Line, the *Line of Numbers*, by several new Examples; and many other Rules, useful for most Men. Illustrated with Figures, proper for Avenues, Walks, Lawns, &c. By Mr. Cook. The 3d Edit. 3 s.

A Critical Examination of the late new Text and Version of the New Testament. Wherein the Editor's fallacious Notes are censured; his Cavils against the Canon of the New Testament are refuted; the Blunders and Iniquities of his various Readings are exposed; and Justice in particular is done to the famous Text of 1 John v. 7. against his partial Representation of that Matter. Together with a Defence of the Divine Authority of the Book of Revelations, against the aforesaid Editor, and the Discourse Historical and Critical on the Revelations ascribed to St. John. Wherein, particularly, the Characters of many eminent Fathers are vindicated against the Calumnies of the Writer afore-mentioned. By Leonard Twells, D. D. In three Parts, 6 s.

A Vindication of the Gospel of St. Matthew, against a late Tract, entitled, A Dissertation and Enquiry concerning the Canonical Authority of the Gospel according to St. Matthew. By Dr. Twells, .1 s. 6 d.

Conversations, Moral and Entertaining, between an English Gentleman and a Knight of Malta. Containing a lively Picture of the Heart of Man, his Passions and Sources of Action: Interpersed with real, curious, and secret Histories on each Subject. The Whole designed as a diverting Improvement in that great Science of Life, the Knowledge of Human Nature, 2 s. 6 d. A Compleat Method of Studying Divinity: Or, a Regular Course of Theological Studies, digested in a New Method. To which is annexed, A Catalogue of the most important Theological Questions, and of the most eminent Authors that have wrote upon each Question. Written originally in French, by the late celebrated M. Du Pin, and now first translated into *English*, 5 s.

The Fables of *Æsop*, and other eminent Mythologists: With Morals and Reflections. By Sir Roger L'Ettrange, Knt. The 8th Edition corrected. 5 s.

The History of the Life and Reign of *LEWIS XIV.* King of France and Navarre. Containing an exact and comprehensive Relation of all the Battles, Sieges, Insurrections, Negotiations, Intrigues, Secret Designs; Literary and other Foundations, Inventions, and Improvements; Contests and Proceedings, Ecclesiastical and Civil; with whatever else is memorable in that long and active Reign: With Characters of the principal Persons concerned in them, and Reflections on the most remarkable Events. Extracted from the best Writers of the French and other Nations. In 3 Vol. 9 s.

Wisdom's Pourtrait: Or, the Life and Moral Reflections of that great and most excellent Emperor MARCUS ANTONINUS; with Gataker's preliminary Discourse containing a Comparison between the Principles of the STOICKS and those of the PERIPATETICKS, and, more especially, the EPICUREAN Sect; as likewise an Examination of the remaining Writings of the STOICK Philosophers. To which is added, the Mythological Picture of Cebes the Theban, 3 s. 6 d.

The Memoirs and Miscellaneous Works of the Right Honourable Charles late Earl of Hallifax. Including the History of his Lordship's Times. 3 s. 6 d.

The Clerk's Instructor in the Practice of the Courts of King's-Bench and Common-Pleas, &c. The 2d Edit. carefully revised, corrected, and made conformable to the present Practice; with very large Additions. By Daniel Reading, 2 Vol. 8vo. 9 s.

A New Family Instructor; in familiar Discourses between a Father and his Children, on the most essential Points of the Christian Religion. In Two Parts. Part I. Containing a Father's Instructions to his Son upon his going to travel into Popish Countries; and to the rest of his Children, on his Son's turning Papist; confirming them in the Protestant Religion, against the Absurdities of Popery. Part II. Instructions against the three grand Errors of the Times, viz. 1. Asserting the Authority of the Scripture against the Deists. 2. Proofs that the Messiah is already come, &c. against the Atheists and Jews. 3. Asserting the Divinity of Jesus Christ, that he was really the same with the Messiah, and that the Messiah was to be really God; against our modern Heretics. With a Poem on the Divine Nature of Christ. 3 s. 6 d.

Miscellaneous Poems by several great Hands; particularly the Duke of Wharton, Sir Samuel Garth, Dean Swift, Mr. John Hughes, Mr. Thomson, and others. Published by Mr. Ralph, Author of the Champion, 2s. 6d. Prælectiones Chymicæ: In quibus omnes fere Operationes Chymicæ ad vera Principia & ipsius Naturæ Leges rediguntur: Anno 1704. Oxonii, in Museo Aſtmoleano habitæ. A Johanne Freund, M. D. Editio altera, priore emendatior: cui accessit Appendix, in qua continentur Lestionum Chymicarum Recensio & Vindicæ, 3 s.

Johannis Freund ad celeberrimum Virum Ricardum Mead, M. D. de quibusdam Variolarum Generibus Epitola. 1 s.

———— N. B. This Tract is very scarce and valuable.

Oratio Anniversaria in Theatro Collegii Regalis Medicorum Londin. habitæ. Ex Harvæi Instituto, in eorum Commemorationem, qui sua in hoc Collegium beneficentiâ claruerunt. Die xviii Octob. Ann. 1720. 6 d.

The Lives of illustrious Men, British and Foreign, who died in the Years 1711 and 1712. viz. the Emperor *Joseph*; the *Dauphin*; the Prince of *Friesland*; the Duke of *Rutland*; the Duke of *Newcastle*; the Duke of *Bedford*; the Duke of *Dover*;

the

the Marechal de Boufflers; the Marquis de Leganez; the Earl of Bolingbroke; the Earl of Rochester; the Earl of Bath; the Lord Craven; the Lord Willoughby of Brooke; Monsieur Boileau; Anthony Henley, Esq; Mr. Dodwell; the Duke of Hamilton; the Duke of Leeds; the Earl of Godolphin; the Earl of Ranelagh; the Earl Rivers; the Lord Mohun; Lieut. General Wood; Arthur Manwaring, Esq; Mr. Richard Cromwell, once Lord Protector of England, Scotland, and Ireland; the second Dauphin; the Duke de Vendosme; the Marechal de Casinat; Mr. Ludolph; and several other considerable Persons. In 2 Vol. 9s.

Woman not inferior to Man: Or, a short and modest Vindication of the natural Right of the Fair Sex to a perfect Equality of Power, Dignity, and Esteem, with the Men. By SOPHIA, a Person of Quality, Price 1s.

Woman's superior Excellence over Man. Being a Reply to all the Objections that have been made to the foregoing Discourse: With a plain Demonstration of Woman's natural Right even to Superiority over the Men in Head and Heart; proving their Minds as much more beautiful than the Men's, as their Bodies are; and that, had they the same Advantages of Education, they would excel them as much in Sense as they do in Virtue. The whole interspersed with a Variety of Male Characters, which some of the most noted Heroes of the present Age had the Goodness to sit for. By the Author of Woman not inferior to Man, 1s. 6d.

THE COMPLETE SURGEON, or the whole Art of Surgery explained in a most familiar Method. Containing the Principles of that Art; and an exact Account of Tumours, Ulcers, and Wounds, simple and complicated, with those by Gun-shot: As also of Venereal Diseases, the Scurvy, Fractures, and Luxations. With all Sorts of Chirurgical Operations; The Bandages and Dressings, which are illustrated in forty Copper-Plates; the Method of dissecting the Brain, by M. Duncan; several Reflections and new Machines by M. Arnaud.

Likewise a Chirurgical Dispensatory; shewing the Manner of preparing all such Medicines as are most necessary for a Surgeon; and particularly the Mercurial Panacea. Written in FRENCH by M. Le Clerc, Physician in Ordinary to the late French King. The sixth Edition. To which are added, the Method of Midwifery; of preparing the Unguentum Martis, and the Unguentum Styracis; a short Introduction to BOTANY; and some Examples of Reports in Surgery. 5s.

A Tour through the whole Island of Great-Britain. Divided into Circuits or Journies. Giving a particular and entertaining Account of whatever is curious, and worth Observation, viz. I. A Description of the principal Cities and Towns, their Situation, Government, and Commerce. II. The Customs, Manners, Exercise, Diversions, and Employments of the People. III. The Produce and Improvement of the Lands, the Trade

Trade and Manufactures. IV. The Sea Ports and Fortifications, the Course of Rivers, and the Inland Navigation. V. The publick Edifices, Seats, and Palaces of the Nobility and Gentry. VI. The Isles of Wight, Portland, Jersey, Guernsey, and the other English and Scottish Isles of most Note. Interspersed with useful Observations. Particularly fitted for the Perusal of such as desire to travel over the Island. By a Gentleman. The third Edition. With very great Additions, Corrections, and Improvements; which bring it down to the present Time, 4 Vol. 12s.

The Clerk's Associate: Containing an Account of the High Court of Chancery, of the Offices, Clerks, and their Business. Also the Method of Practice and Proceedings. Together with Variety of useful Forms and Instructions. Fitted for the Use of young Clerks in Chancery, Practisers, &c. By a Gentleman of Lincoln's Inn, 2s.

The KEBLA: Or, a Defence of Eastward Adoration. By John Andrews, Minister of South Newington in Oxfordshire, 6d.

A Preservative against unsettled Notions, and want of Principles in Regard to Righteousness and Christian Perfection. An explanatory Sermon on that mistaken Text, *Be not righteous over-much; neither make thyself over-wise: Why shouldst thou destroy thyself?* Being an Answer to Dr. Trapp's four Sermons upon the same Text, perverted against the Methodists. To which is prefixed, a serious Address to all the true Members of Christ's Holy Church, 6d.

The HISTORY of the WORKS of the LEARNED, from the Year 1737 to this present Time. Giving a General View of the State of Learning throughout Europe, and containing an impartial Account and accurate Abstracts of the most valuable Books published in Great-Britain and Foreign Parts. Interspersed with Dissertations on several curious and entertaining Subjects, critical Reflections, and Memoirs of the most eminent Writers in all Branches of polite Literature. Among a great Variety of curious Articles, are the following, *viz.* I. Philosophical Transactions for the Year 1736. II. Dr. Lamotte's Remarks on the Death of Cato, &c. III. The History of the Life of James Duke of Ormond, &c. By Thomas Carte, M. A. IV. Du Halde's History of China. V. Lamotte's History of Herod the younger, &c. VI. The Memoirs of Charles Lewis, Baron de Pollnitz, &c. VII. M. Drake's History of the City of York. VIII. An Examination of the Question, Whether Æneas ever came to Italy, or not? By Charles Lamotte, D. D. IX. The sacred and profane History of the World connected, &c. By Samuel Shuckford, M. A. X. M. Lamotte's Remarks upon the Voice that was heard in the Temple before the Destruction of Jerusalem, &c. XI. Mr. Broughton's Historical Library. XII. Lamotte's Remarks on the Table-Gesture of the Ancients. XIII. A Summary

mary of the Letters that passed between the Reverend Mr. Jackson and William Dudgeon. XIV. Remarks upon the two Battles of Philippi in the Georgics. By Dr. Lamotte. XV. M. Rollin's History of the Ancients. XVI. The true Gospel of Jesus Christ asserted. By Thomas Chubb. XVII. Lamotte's Remarks on the Death of Brennus and his Army at Delphis. XVIII. The Divine Legation of Moses demonstrated. By William Warburton, A. M. XIX. Lamotte's Remarks upon a Passage in Virgil, relating to Agriculture. XX. The Present State of Germany. XXI. Travels and Observations relating to several Parts of Barbary and the Levant. XXII. An Enquiry into the Religion of Seneca the Philosopher. XXIII. The Figure of the Earth demonstrated, from Observations made by Order of the French King. By M. Maupertuis. XXIV. The Divine Authority of the New Testament asserted. By John Lealand, D. D. XXV. A Vindication of the Jews and their Religion, from the Calumnies of the Egyptian, the Greek, and the Roman Writers. By Charles Lamotte, D. D. XXVI. Warburton's Letters in Vindication of Mr. Pope's Essay on Man, from the Misrepresentations of M. Croufaz. XXVII. Lamotte's Dissertation on the notable Mistake of Servius the Grammarian, in Relation to Ptolomy the Astronomer. XXVIII. A Tour thro' the whole Island of Great-Britain. XXIX. Remarks on Archimedes's setting the Roman Ships on Fire with Burning-Glasses at Syracuse, and on Hannibal's dissolving the Alps with Vinegar, in his famous Passage to Italy from Spain. By Dr. Lamotte. XXX. The Life of Milton. By Mr. Birch. XXXI. An Essay on the Invention and Antiquity of Telescopes. By Dr. Lamotte. XXXII. The History of Prince Eugene of Savoy. XXXIII. The Jewish Spy. XXXIV. Remarks on Shakespear's Writings. By the Reverend Mr. Warburton. XXXV. The History of the Life of Peter I. Emperor of Russia. XXXVI. A Defence of Moses's Account of the Land of Judea. By Dr. Lamotte. XXXVII. Remarks upon some Passages in Florus; with Observations on the Roman Triumphs. By Dr. Lamotte. XXXVIII. The Philosophical Transactions for the Year 1738. XXXIX. Stone-henge, a Temple restored to the British Druids. By Dr. Stukeley. XL. The Negotiations of Sir Thomas Roe, in his Embassy to the Ottoman Porte. XLI. A compleat Edition of the Philosophical Works of Cicero. In French and Latin. By M. Durand. XLII. A Dissertation on St. Paul's Appeal to Cæsar. By Dr. Lamotte. XLIII. Pamela: or, Virtue Rewarded, &c. XLIV. The Antiquity of the Sea-Compass. By Dr. Lamotte. XLV. The Lives of the Professors of Gresham-College. XLVI. The History of the Life of M. T. Cicero. By Dr. Middleton. XLVII. Two remarkable Dissertations. By Dr. Lamotte. XLVIII. Dr. Watts's Essay for the Improvement of the Mind. XLIX. Dr. Morgan's Physico-Theology. L. An Essay upon Criticks and Criticism.

By



By Dr. Lamotte. LI. A Dissertation upon the Conduct of Gallio, in Relation to the Apostle St. Paul. By Charles Lamotte, D. D. LII. Mr. Whiston's Account relating to the Discovery of the Longitude. LIII. Remarks upon the Pleasure, Usefulness, and Advantage of Fables. By Dr. Lamotte. LIV. Memoirs of Mr. Woollaston, Author of the Religion of Nature Delineated. LV. An Abridgment of the Philosophical History and Memoirs of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Paris. Compiled by Mr. Fontenelle. LVI. An Account of the State Papers of the Right Honourable Roger Boyle, the first Earl of Orrery, &c. with his Life. LVII. Mr. Lowman's Dissertation on the Civil Government of the Hebrews. LVIII. A Collection of the State Papers of John Thurloe, Esq; By Thomas Birch, F. R. S. LIX. An Account of the Abbe Des Fontain's Prose Version of all Virgil's Works. LX. The History of Moss. By J. J. Delenny, M. D. Professor of Botany at Oxford. LXI. The Life of the Right Honourable Francis North, Esq; Baron of Guilford, Lord Keeper of the Great Seal under King Charles II. By the Honourable Roger North, Esq; LXII. Dr. Waterland's Sermons. LXIII. M. de Blainville's Travels through Holland, Germany, Switzerland, Italy, &c. By Dr. Turnbull. LXIV. An Historical Account of the Life and Reign of David King of Israel. LXV. The Epistles of M. T. Cicero to Brutus, and of Brutus to Cicero. By Conyers Middleton, D. D. LXVI. A General System of Surgery, translated from the Latin of Dr. Lawrence Heister, Professor of Physic and Surgery in the University of Helmstadt. LXVII. An Account of the Life of the celebrated Mr. Rollin. LXVIII. The Principles of a Theory of the Immaterial World. LXIX. The Microscope made Easy. By Henry Baker, F. R. S, &c. &c.

The Virtuous Orphan: Or, the Life of Marianne, Countess of \*\*\*\*\*. In four neat Pocket Volumes. Translated from the French, 10 s. — The agreeable Variety of affecting Incidents which compose this entertaining History, must delight every intelligent Reader, whilst the Reflections, which are the natural Language of the Heart, have an apparent Tendency to improve the Mind, and insensibly instil a Love of Virtue.

Delightful Task! to rear the tender Thought,  
To teach the Young Ideas how to st o!  
To pour the fresh Instruction o'er the Mind!  
To breathe th' inspiring Spirit, and to plant  
The generous Purpose in the glowing Breast.

THOMPSON,

9/185

duct of  
amotte,  
Disco-  
leasure,  
LIV.  
Nature  
History  
s. Com-  
e State  
Earl of  
ertation  
illection  
s Birch,  
s Prose  
f Mofs.  
LXI.  
; Baron  
Charles  
Water-  
through  
urnbull.  
f David  
ccero to  
D. D.  
om the  
Surgery  
ount of  
e Prin-  
K. The  
c. &c.  
Countess  
anflated  
f affect-  
, must  
, which  
pparent  
a Love

